

Anti-pluricanonical systems on Fano varieties

By CAUCHER BIRKAR

Abstract

In this paper, we study the linear systems $| -mK_X |$ on Fano varieties X with klt singularities. In a given dimension d , we prove $| -mK_X |$ is non-empty and contains an element with “good singularities” for some natural number m depending only on d ; if in addition X is ϵ -lc for some $\epsilon > 0$, then we show that we can choose m depending only on d and ϵ so that $| -mK_X |$ defines a birational map. Further, we prove Shokurov’s conjecture on boundedness of complements, and show that certain classes of Fano varieties form bounded families.

Contents

1. Introduction	347
Effective non-vanishing	347
Effective birationality for ϵ -lc Fano varieties	348
Boundedness of certain classes of Fano varieties	348
Boundedness of complements	349
Boundedness of complements in the relative setting	350
Boundedness of complements for generalised polarised pairs	351
Boundedness of exceptional pairs	352
Structure of the paper	352
Sketch of some proofs	352
Acknowledgements	356
2. Preliminaries	356
2.1. Contractions	356
2.2. Hyperstandard sets	356
2.3. Divisors	357
2.5. Linear systems	357
2.7. b-divisors	358

Keywords: Fano varieties, complements, linear systems, minimal model program
AMS Classification: Primary: 14J45, 14E30, 14C20, 14E05.
© 2019 Department of Mathematics, Princeton University.

2.8. Pairs	359
2.9. Minimal model program (MMP)	359
2.10. Fano pairs	359
2.13. Generalised polarised pairs	360
2.15. Exceptional and non-exceptional pairs	363
2.18. Complements	364
2.19. Bounded families of pairs	365
2.23. Cartier index in bounded families	367
2.27. Families of subvarieties	369
2.30. Potentially birational divisors	371
2.31. Non-klt centres	372
2.34. Pseudo-effective thresholds	374
2.36. Numerical Kodaira dimension	374
2.38. Volume of divisors	375
2.41. The restriction exact sequence	376
2.43. Descent of nef divisors	377
2.45. Pairs with large boundaries	377
2.47. Divisors with log discrepancy close to 0	378
2.49. Boundary coefficients close to 1	378
3. Adjunction	380
3.1. Divisorial adjunction	380
3.4. Adjunction for fibre spaces	383
3.8. Adjunction on non-klt centres	386
3.13. Lifting sections from non-klt centres	391
4. Effective birationality	395
4.1. Singularities in bounded families	395
4.3. Log birational boundedness of certain pairs	397
4.5. Boundedness of singularities on non-klt centres	400
4.7. Effective birationality for Fano varieties with good \mathbb{Q} -complements	404
4.10. Effective birationality for nearly canonical Fano varieties	407
5. Proof of Theorem 1.4	412
6. Boundedness of complements	415
6.1. General remarks	415
6.2. Hyperstandard coefficients under adjunction for fibre spaces	416
6.4. Pulling back complements from the base of a fibration	420
6.6. Lifting complements from a non-klt centre	423
6.12. Boundedness of complements	435
7. Boundedness of exceptional pairs	436
7.1. Bound on singularities	437
7.3. From complements to Theorem 1.3	438
7.6. Bound on exceptional thresholds	440

7.8. Bound on anti-canonical volumes	441
7.10. Bound on lc thresholds	443
7.12. From bound on lc thresholds to boundedness of varieties	443
7.14. From complements to Theorem 1.11	446
8. Boundedness of relative complements	448
9. Anti-canonical volume	455
10. Proofs of main results	459
References	460

1. Introduction

We work over an algebraically closed field of characteristic zero. Given a smooth projective variety W , the minimal model program predicts that W is birational to a projective variety Y with canonical singularities such that either K_Y is ample, or Y admits a fibration whose general fibres X are Calabi-Yau varieties or Fano varieties. (Here we consider Calabi-Yau varieties in a weak sense, that is, by requiring $K_X \equiv 0$ without the vanishing $h^i(X, \mathcal{O}_X) = 0$ for $0 < i < \dim X$, which is assumed in some other contexts.) In other words, one may say that, birationally, every variety is in some sense constructed from varieties X with good singularities such that either K_X is ample or numerically trivial or anti-ample. So it is quite natural to study such special varieties with the hope of obtaining some sort of classification theory. They are also very interesting in moduli theory, differential geometry, arithmetic geometry, and mathematical physics.

When X is one dimensional, the linear system $|K_X|$ determines its geometry to a large extent. However, in higher dimension, one needs to study $|mK_X|$ or $|-mK_X|$ for all $m \in \mathbb{N}$ (depending on the type of X) in order to investigate the geometry of X . If K_X is ample, then there is m depending only on the dimension such that $|mK_X|$ defines a birational embedding into some projective space, by Hacon-McKernan [15] and Takayama [45]. If K_X is numerically trivial, there is m such that $|mK_X|$ is non-empty but it is not clear whether we can choose m depending only on the dimension. When K_X is anti-ample, that is, when X is Fano, in this paper we study boundedness and singularity properties of the linear systems $|-mK_X|$ in a quite general setting in conjunction with Shokurov's theory of complements.

Effective non-vanishing. Our first result is a consequence of boundedness of complements (Theorem 1.7 below). We state it separately because it involves little technicalities.

THEOREM 1.1. *Let d be a natural number. Then there is a natural number m depending only on d such that if X is any Fano variety of dimension d with Kawamata log terminal (klt) singularities, then the linear system $|-mK_X|$ is*

non-empty, that is, $h^0(-mK_X) \neq 0$. Moreover, the linear system contains a divisor M such that $(X, \frac{1}{m}M)$ has log canonical (lc) singularities.

Obviously the statement also holds if we replace Fano with the more general notion of weak Fano, that is, if $-K_X$ is nef and big. The theorem was proved by Shokurov in dimension two [43].

Effective birationality for ϵ -lc Fano varieties. If we bound the singularities of X , we then have a much stronger statement than the non-vanishing of [Theorem 1.1](#).

THEOREM 1.2. *Let d be a natural number and $\epsilon > 0$ a real number. Then there is a natural number m depending only on d and ϵ such that if X is any ϵ -lc weak Fano variety of dimension d , then $|-mK_X|$ defines a birational map.*

Note that m indeed depends on d as well as ϵ because the theorem implies the volume $\text{vol}(-K_X)$ is bounded from below by $\frac{1}{m^d}$. Without the ϵ -lc assumption, $\text{vol}(-K_X)$ can get arbitrarily small or large [18, Exam. 2.1.1]. In dimension 2, the theorem is a consequence of Alexeev [1], and in dimension 3, special cases are proved by Jiang [23] using different methods. Paolo Cascini informed us that he and James McKernan have independently proved the theorem for canonical singularities, that is when $\epsilon = 1$, using quite different methods.

Boundedness of certain classes of Fano varieties. Fano varieties come in two flavours: *non-exceptional* and *exceptional*. A Fano variety X is non-exceptional if there is $0 \leq P \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} -K_X$ such that (X, P) is not klt. Otherwise we say X is exceptional. In the non-exceptional case we can create non-klt centres that sometimes can be used to do induction, i.e., lift sections and complements from such centres (see, e.g., [Proposition 6.8](#) below). We do not have that luxury in the exceptional case. Instead we show that there is a “limited number” of them; that is,

THEOREM 1.3. *Let d be a natural number. Then the set of exceptional weak Fano varieties of dimension d forms a bounded family.*

Exceptional pairs and exceptional generalised polarised pairs can be defined similarly. We will extend [Theorem 1.3](#) to such pairs (see [Theorem 1.11](#) below) which is important for our proofs. In a different direction, we have

THEOREM 1.4. *Let d be a natural number, and let ϵ and δ be positive real numbers. Consider projective varieties X equipped with a boundary B such that*

- (X, B) is ϵ -lc of dimension d ,
- B is big and $K_X + B \sim_{\mathbb{R}} 0$, and
- the coefficients of B are more than or equal to δ .

Then the set of such X forms a bounded family.

Note that B is not necessarily \mathbb{R} -Cartier. Bigness means $B \sim_{\mathbb{R}} H + D$, where H is an ample \mathbb{R} -divisor and D is an effective \mathbb{R} -divisor.

Hacon and Xu proved the theorem assuming the coefficients of B belong to a fixed set of rational numbers satisfying the descending chain condition (DCC) [19, Th. 1.3] relying on the special case when $-K_X$ is ample [18, Cor. 1.7]. The theorem can be viewed as a special case of the following conjecture due to the Alexeev and the Borisov brothers (BAB).

CONJECTURE 1.5 (BAB). *Let d be a natural number and ϵ a positive real number. Then the set of ϵ -lc Fano varieties X of dimension d forms a bounded family.*

The conjecture is often stated in the log case for pairs (X, B) , but it is not hard to reduce it to the above version. Using the results and ideas developed in this paper the conjecture is proved in the sequel [6]. The conjecture was previously known

- for dimension two [1]
- for smooth X [34],
- for toric X [11],
- for threefolds of Picard number one and terminal singularities [27],
- for threefolds with canonical singularities [35],
- for threefolds with K_X having bounded Cartier index [10],
- in any dimension with K_X having bounded Cartier index [18, Cor. 1.8],
- for spherical varieties [2],
- and the case [18, Cor. 1.7] mentioned above.

Next we show [Conjecture 1.5](#) in dimension $d - 1$ implies a weak form of [Conjecture 1.5](#) in dimension d .

THEOREM 1.6. *Let d be a natural number and ϵ a positive real number. Assume [Conjecture 1.5](#) holds in dimension $d - 1$. Then there is a number v depending only on d and ϵ such that if X is an ϵ -lc weak Fano variety of dimension d , then $\text{vol}(-K_X) \leq v$. In particular, such X are birationally bounded.*

In dimension 3, the boundedness of $\text{vol}(-K_X)$ was proved by Lai [37] for X of Picard number one and by Jiang [22] in general who also proves the birational boundedness of X in [23] using different methods. [Theorem 1.6](#) gives new proofs of their results since [Conjecture 1.5](#) is known in dimension 2. The theorem is one of the crucial inductive steps of the proof of [Conjecture 1.5](#) in [6].

Boundedness of complements. Shokurov introduced the theory of complements while investigating threefold log flips [42, §5]. The theory originates from his earlier work on anticanonical systems on Fano threefolds [41]. The

notion of complement involves both boundedness and singularities of the linear systems $| -mK_X |$. It is actually defined in the more general setting of pairs. See [Section 2.18](#) for relevant definitions.

The following theorem was conjectured by Shokurov [[43](#), Conj.1.3] who proved it in dimension 2 [[43](#), Th. 1.4]. (See also [[40](#), Cor. 1.8], and [[42](#)] for some cases.)

THEOREM 1.7. *Let d be a natural number and $\mathfrak{R} \subset [0, 1]$ be a finite set of rational numbers. Then there exists a natural number n depending only on d and \mathfrak{R} satisfying the following. Assume (X, B) is a projective pair such that*

- (X, B) is lc of dimension d ;
- $B \in \Phi(\mathfrak{R})$, that is, the coefficients of B are in $\Phi(\mathfrak{R})$;
- X is of Fano type; and
- $-(K_X + B)$ is nef.

Then there is an n -complement $K_X + B^+$ of $K_X + B$ such that $B^+ \geq B$. Moreover, the complement is also an mn -complement for any $m \in \mathbb{N}$.

Here Fano type means (X, G) is klt and $-(K_X + G)$ is ample for some boundary G , and $\Phi(\mathfrak{R})$ is the set of numbers of the form $1 - \frac{r}{l}$ with $r \in \mathfrak{R}$ and $l \in \mathbb{N}$. Note that the theorem says, in particular, that

$$-n(K_X + B) \sim n(B^+ - B) \geq 0,$$

hence the linear system $| -n(K_X + B) |$ is not empty.

Prokhorov and Shokurov [[39](#)], [[40](#)] prove various inductive statements regarding complements. They also show [[40](#), Th. 1.4] that [Theorem 1.7](#) follows from two conjectures in the same dimension: the BAB conjecture ([Conjecture 1.5](#) above) and the adjunction conjecture for fibre spaces [[40](#), Conj. 7.13]. In dimension 3, one only needs the BAB [[40](#), Cor. 1.7], and this also can be dropped if in addition we assume (X, B) is non-exceptional. In this paper we replace the BAB with its special cases [Theorems 1.3](#) and [1.4](#), and we replace the adjunction conjecture with the theory of generalised polarised pairs developed in [[9](#)]. See [[44](#)] for Shokurov's work on adjunction.

It is expected that [Theorem 1.7](#) holds for more general boundary coefficients. However, this is not well understood even in dimension 2.

Boundedness of complements in the relative setting. Complements are also defined in the relative setting (see [Section 2.18](#)) for a given contraction $f: X \rightarrow Z$, that is, a projective morphism with $f_*\mathcal{O}_X = \mathcal{O}_Z$. In particular, when $X \rightarrow Z$ is the identity morphism, boundedness of complements is simply a local statement about singularities near a point on X .

THEOREM 1.8. *Let d be a natural number and $\mathfrak{R} \subset [0, 1]$ be a finite set of rational numbers. Then there exists a natural number n depending only on*

d and \mathfrak{R} satisfying the following. Assume (X, B) is a pair and $X \rightarrow Z$ is a contraction such that

- (X, B) is lc of dimension d and $\dim Z > 0$,
- $B \in \Phi(\mathfrak{R})$,
- X is of Fano type over Z , and
- $-(K_X + B)$ is nef over Z .

Then for any point $z \in Z$, there is an n -complement $K_X + B^+$ of $K_X + B$ over z such that $B^+ \geq B$. Moreover, the complement is also an mn -complement for any $m \in \mathbb{N}$.

The theorem was proved by Shokurov [43] in dimension 2 and by Prokhorov and Shokurov [39] in dimension 3. They also essentially show that [Theorem 1.8](#) in dimension d follows from [Theorem 1.7](#) in dimension $d - 1$ [39, Th. 3.1].

In the local situation, [Theorem 1.8](#) implies a boundedness result about singularities.

COROLLARY 1.9. *Let d be a natural number and $\mathfrak{R} \subset [0, 1]$ be a finite set of rational numbers. Then there exists a natural number n depending only on d and \mathfrak{R} satisfying the following. Assume (X, B) is a pair and $V \subset X$ is a subvariety such that*

- (X, B) is lc of dimension d ,
- $B \in \Phi(\mathfrak{R})$,
- V is a non-klt centre of (X, B) , and
- (X, Δ) is klt near the generic point of V for some Δ .

Then $n(K_X + B)$ is Cartier near the generic point of V .

Note that existence of Δ is equivalent to saying that X is of Fano type over itself perhaps after shrinking it around the generic point of V .

Boundedness of complements for generalised polarised pairs. We prove boundedness of complements in the even more general setting of generalised polarised pairs. This is of independent interest but also fundamental to our proofs. It gives enough flexibility to apply induction on dimension, unlike [Theorem 1.7](#). For the relevant definitions, see [Sections 2.13](#) and [2.18](#).

THEOREM 1.10. *Let d and p be natural numbers and $\mathfrak{R} \subset [0, 1]$ be a finite set of rational numbers. Then there exists a natural number n depending only on d, p , and \mathfrak{R} satisfying the following. Assume $(X', B' + M')$ is a projective generalised polarised pair with data $\phi: X \rightarrow X'$ and M such that*

- $(X', B' + M')$ is generalised lc of dimension d ,
- $B' \in \Phi(\mathfrak{R})$ and pM is b-Cartier,
- X' is of Fano type, and

- $-(K_{X'} + B' + M')$ is nef.

Then there is an n -complement $K_{X'} + B'^+ + M'$ of $K_{X'} + B' + M'$ such that $B'^+ \geq B'$. Moreover, the complement is also an mn -complement for any $m \in \mathbb{N}$.

Here pM being b -Cartier simply means that its pullback to some resolution of X is Cartier. Generalised polarised pairs behave similar to usual pairs in many ways. For example, see also the effective birationality results for polarised pairs of general type established in [9].

Boundedness of exceptional pairs. As mentioned earlier, in order to carry out our inductive arguments we need boundedness of exceptional pairs as in the next result.

THEOREM 1.11. *Let d and p be natural numbers and $\mathfrak{R} \subset [0, 1]$ be a finite set of rational numbers. Consider the pairs $(X', B' + M')$ as in [Theorem 1.10](#) that are exceptional. Then the set of the (X', B') is log bounded.*

Structure of the paper. We outline the organisation of the paper. In [Section 2](#), we gather some of the tools used in the paper, and prove certain basic results. In [Section 3](#), we discuss various types of adjunction, recall some known results, and prove some new results (e.g., [Lemma 3.12](#) and [Proposition 3.15](#)) crucial for later sections. In [Section 4](#), we prove [Theorem 1.2](#) under some additional assumptions ([Propositions 4.9](#) and [4.11](#)). In [Section 5](#), we prove [Theorem 1.4](#). In [Section 6](#), we develop the theory of complements for generalised polarised pairs, prove various inductive statements (e.g., [Propositions 6.5](#) and [Proposition 6.8](#)), and discuss behaviour of boundary coefficients under adjunction for fibre spaces ([Lemma 6.3](#)). In [Section 7](#), we study exceptional pairs and treat [Theorems 1.3](#) and [1.11](#) inductively (e.g., [Lemmas 7.2](#), [7.5](#), [7.9](#), and [Proposition 7.15](#)), and give a criterion for a family of Fano varieties to be bounded ([Proposition 7.13](#)), which is also a crucial ingredient of the proof of [Conjecture 1.5](#) in [6]. In [Section 8](#), we discuss complements in the relative setting ([Proposition 8.2](#)). In [Section 9](#), we [prove 1.6](#). Finally, in [Section 10](#), we give the proofs of all the main results except those proved earlier. It is worth mentioning that some of the results stated for varieties only can be easily extended to the log case (e.g., [Theorems 1.2](#) and [1.6](#)) but for simplicity we treat the non-log case only.

Sketch of some proofs. The main tools used in this paper are the minimal model program [36], [8], the theory of complements [39], [40], [43], creating families of non-klt centres using volumes [18], [17], [33, §6], and the theory of generalised polarised pairs [9]. We give a brief account of some of the

ideas of the proof of boundedness of complements (Theorem 1.7) and effective birationality (Theorem 1.2).

We start with boundedness of complements (Theorem 1.7). Pick a sufficiently small $\epsilon \in (0, 1)$. If (X, B) is non-exceptional, then we can modify it and assume it is not klt. On the other hand, if (X, B) is exceptional, then we can bound its singularities, hence assume it is ϵ -lc perhaps after decreasing ϵ . Define Θ to be the same as B except that we replace each coefficient in $(1 - \epsilon, 1)$ with 1. Run a minimal model program (MMP) on $-(K_X + \Theta)$, and let X' be the resulting model and Θ' be the pushdown of Θ . Since X is of Fano type, we can run MMP on any divisor on X .

As a consequence of local and global ascending chain condition (ACC) [18, Ths. 1.1, 1.5] (in practice we need their generalisations to generalised pairs [9, Ths. 1.5, 1.6]), we can show that the MMP does not contract any component of $[\Theta]$, (X', Θ') is lc, and $-(K_{X'} + \Theta')$ is nef (Proposition 2.50). It is enough to construct a bounded complement for $K_{X'} + \Theta'$. Replacing (X, B) with (X', Θ') and making further modifications, we can assume that the coefficients of B belong to \mathfrak{R} and that one of the following cases occurs:

- (1) $-(K_X + B)$ is nef and big, and B has a component S with coefficient 1 that is of Fano type; or
- (2) $K_X + B \equiv 0$ along a fibration $f: X \rightarrow T$; or
- (3) (X, B) is exceptional.

These cases require very different inductive treatments.

Case (1): First apply divisorial adjunction to define

$$K_S + B_S = (K_X + B)|_S.$$

The coefficients of B_S happen to be in $\Phi(\mathfrak{S})$ for some fixed finite set \mathfrak{S} of rational numbers. By induction on dimension $K_S + B_S$ has an n -complement for some bounded natural number n . The idea then is to lift the complement to X using vanishing theorems. In the simplest case when (X, B) is log smooth and $B = S$, we look at the exact sequence

$$H^0(-n(K_X + B)) \rightarrow H^0(-n(K_X + B)|_S) \rightarrow H^1(-n(K_X + B) - S) = 0,$$

where the vanishing follows from the Kawamata-Viehweg vanishing theorem noting that

$$-n(K_X + B) - S = K_X - n(K_X + B) - (K_X + B) = K_X - (n + 1)(K_X + B).$$

Since $K_S + B_S$ has an n -complement, the middle space in the above sequence is non-trivial, which implies the left-hand side is also non-trivial by lifting the section corresponding to the complement. One then argues that the lifted section gives an n -complement for $K_X + B$.

Case (2): Apply the canonical bundle formula (also called adjunction for fibre spaces) to write

$$K_X + B \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} f^*(K_T + B_T + M_T),$$

where B_T is the discriminant divisor and M_T is the moduli divisor. It turns out that the coefficients of B_T are in $\Phi(\mathfrak{S})$ for some fixed finite set \mathfrak{S} of rational numbers, and that pM_T is integral for some bounded number $p \in \mathbb{N}$. Now we want to find a complement for $K_T + B_T + M_T$ and pull it back to X . There is a serious issue here: $(T, B_T + M_T)$ is not a pair but it is a generalised polarised pair. Thus we actually need to construct complements in the more general setting of generalised polarised pairs. This makes life a lot more difficult but fortunately everything turns out to work. Once we have a bounded complement for $K_T + B_T + M_T$ we pull it back to get a bounded complement for $K_X + B$.

Case (3): For simplicity assume $B = 0$ and that X is a Fano variety. If we could show that X belongs to a bounded family, then we would be done. Actually we need something weaker: effective birationality. Assume we have already proved [Theorem 1.2](#). Then there is a bounded number $m \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $|-mK_X|$ defines a birational map. Pick $M \in |-mK_X|$, and let $B^+ = \frac{1}{m}M$. Since X is exceptional, (X, B^+) is automatically klt, hence $K_X + B^+$ is an m -complement. Although this gives some idea of how one may get a bounded complement, in practice we cannot give a complete proof of [Theorem 1.2](#) before proving [Theorem 1.7](#). The two theorems are actually proved together. Moreover, since we need to construct complements for generalised polarised pairs, treating the exceptional case in that setting is much harder.

Now we give a brief sketch of the proof of the effective birationality theorem ([Theorem 1.2](#)). Let $m \in \mathbb{N}$ be the smallest number such that $|-mK_X|$ defines a birational map, and let $n \in \mathbb{N}$ be a number such that $\text{vol}(-nK_X) > (2d)^d$. Initially we take n to be the smallest such number but we will modify it during the proof. We want to show that m is bounded from above. The idea is first to show that $\frac{m}{n}$ is bounded from above, and then at the end to show that m is bounded.

Applying a standard technique we can create a covering family \mathcal{G} of subvarieties of X such that if $x, y \in X$ are any pair of general closed points, then there is $0 \leq \Delta \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} -(n+1)K_X$ and $G \in \mathcal{G}$ such that (X, Δ) is lc at x with the unique non-klt centre G containing x , and (X, Δ) is not klt at y .

Assume $\dim G = 0$ for all G . Then $G = \{x\}$ is an isolated non-klt centre. Using multiplier ideal sheaves and vanishing theorems we can lift sections from G and show that $|-nK_X|$ defines a birational map after replacing n with a bounded multiple; hence, in particular, $\frac{m}{n}$ is bounded from above in this case.

Now let's assume all G have positive dimension. If $\text{vol}(-mK_X|_G)$ is too large, then using some elementary arguments, we can replace n and create a

new non-klt centre G' containing x but with $\dim G' < \dim G$. Thus we can replace G with G' and apply induction on dimension of G . We can then assume $\text{vol}(-mK_X|_G)$ is bounded from above.

Similar to the previous paragraph, we can cut G and decrease its dimension if $\text{vol}(-nK_X|_G)$ is bounded from below. Showing this lower boundedness is the hard part. Although G is not necessarily a divisor and although the singularities of (X, Δ) away from x maybe quite bad, there is still a kind of adjunction formula; that is, if F is the normalisation of G , then we can write

$$(K_X + \Delta)|_F \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} K_F + \Theta_F + P_F,$$

where Θ_F is a divisor with coefficients in a fixed DCC set $\Psi \subset [0, 1]$ depending only on d , and P_F is pseudo-effective. Replacing n with $2n$ and adding to Δ , we can easily make P_F big and effective.

Now we would ideally want to apply induction on d , but the difficulty is that F may not be Fano; in fact, it can be any type of variety. Another issue is that the singularities of $(F, \Theta_F + P_F)$ can be pretty bad. To overcome these difficulties we use the fact that $\text{vol}(-mK_X|_G)$ is bounded from above. From this boundedness one can deduce that there is a bounded projective log smooth pair $(\bar{F}, \Sigma_{\bar{F}})$ and a birational map $\bar{F} \dashrightarrow F$ such that $\Sigma_{\bar{F}}$ is reduced containing the exceptional divisor of $\bar{F} \dashrightarrow F$ and the support of the birational transform of Θ_F (and other relevant divisors).

Surprisingly, the worse the singularities of $(F, \Theta_F + P_F)$, the better, because we can then produce divisors on \bar{F} with bounded “degree” but with arbitrarily small lc thresholds, which would contradict a result about singularities (Proposition 4.2). Indeed assume $(F, \Theta_F + P_F)$ is not klt. A careful study of the above adjunction formula allows one to write $K_F + \Lambda_F := K_X|_F$, where $\Lambda_F \leq \Theta_F$ and (F, Λ_F) is sub- ϵ -lc. Put $I_F = \Theta_F + P_F - \Lambda_F$. Then

$$I_F = K_F + \Theta_F + P_F - K_F - \Lambda_F \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} (K_X + \Delta)|_F - K_X|_F = \Delta|_F \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} -(n+1)K_X|_F.$$

Moreover, $K_F + \Lambda_F + I_F$ is ample.

Let $\phi: F' \rightarrow F$ and $\psi: F' \rightarrow \bar{F}$ be a common resolution. Pull back $K_F + \Lambda_F + I_F$ to F' , and then push it down to \bar{F} and write it as $K_{\bar{F}} + \Lambda_{\bar{F}} + I_{\bar{F}}$. Then the above ampleness gives

$$\phi^*(K_F + \Lambda_F + I_F) \leq \psi^*(K_{\bar{F}} + \Lambda_{\bar{F}} + I_{\bar{F}}),$$

which implies that $(\bar{F}, \Lambda_{\bar{F}} + I_{\bar{F}})$ is not sub-klt. From this one deduces that $(\bar{F}, \Gamma_{\bar{F}} + I_{\bar{F}})$ is not klt, where $\Gamma_{\bar{F}} = (1 - \epsilon)\Sigma_{\bar{F}}$. Finally, one argues that the degree of $I_{\bar{F}}$ gets arbitrarily small if $\text{vol}(-nK_X|_G)$ gets arbitrarily small, and this contradicts the result on singularities mentioned above.

If singularities of $(F, \Theta_F + P_F)$ are good, then we again face some serious difficulties. Very roughly, in this case, we lift sections from F to X (Proposition 3.15) and use this section to modify Δ so that $(F, \Theta_F + P_F)$ has bad

singularities, hence we reduce the problem to the above arguments. This shows $\frac{m}{n}$ is bounded.

Finally, we still need to bound m . This can be done by arguing that $\text{vol}(-mK_X)$ is bounded from above and use this to show X is birationally bounded, and then work on the bounded model.

Acknowledgements. This work was partially supported by a grant of the Leverhulme Trust. Part of this work was done while visiting National Taiwan University in May and August 2015 with the support of the Mathematics Division (Taipei Office) of the National Center for Theoretical Sciences, and arranged by Jungkai Chen. I would like to thank them for their hospitality. I am indebted to Vyacheslav V. Shokurov for teaching me the theory of complements and for his comments. I am grateful to Florin Ambro, Yifei Chen, Jingjun Han, and Jinsong Xu for their comments and corrections. Thanks to Christopher Hacon and the referee for their long list of suggestions, comments, and corrections, which improved this paper considerably.

2. Preliminaries

All the varieties in this paper are quasi-projective over a fixed algebraically closed field of characteristic zero unless stated otherwise. The set of natural numbers \mathbb{N} is the set of positive integers, so it does not contain 0.

2.1. *Contractions.* In this paper a *contraction* refers to a projective morphism $f: X \rightarrow Y$ of varieties such that $f_*\mathcal{O}_X = \mathcal{O}_Y$; f is not necessarily birational. In particular, f has connected fibres and if $X \rightarrow Z \rightarrow Y$ is the Stein factorisation of f , then $Z \rightarrow Y$ is an isomorphism. Moreover, if X is normal, then Y is also normal.

2.2. *Hyperstandard sets.* For a subset $V \subseteq \mathbb{R}$ and a number $a \in \mathbb{R}$, we define $V^{\geq a} = \{v \in V \mid v \geq a\}$. We similarly define $V^{\leq a}$, $V^{< a}$, and $V^{> a}$.

Let \mathfrak{R} be a subset of $[0, 1]$. Following [40, 3.2] we define

$$\Phi(\mathfrak{R}) = \left\{ 1 - \frac{r}{m} \mid r \in \mathfrak{R}, m \in \mathbb{N} \right\}$$

to be the set of *hyperstandard multiplicities* associated to \mathfrak{R} . We usually assume $0, 1 \in \mathfrak{R}$ without mention, so $\Phi(\mathfrak{R})$ includes $\Phi(\{0, 1\})$, the set of usual *standard multiplicities*. Note that if we add $1 - r$ to \mathfrak{R} for each $r \in \mathfrak{R}$, then we get $\mathfrak{R} \subset \Phi(\mathfrak{R})$.

Now assume $\mathfrak{R} \subset [0, 1]$ is a finite set of rational numbers. Then $\Phi(\mathfrak{R})$ is a DCC set of rational numbers whose only accumulation point is 1. We define $I = I(\mathfrak{R})$ to be the smallest natural number so that $Ir \in \mathbb{Z}$ for every $r \in \mathfrak{R}$. If $n \in \mathbb{N}$ is divisible by $I(\mathfrak{R})$, then $nb \leq \lfloor (n+1)b \rfloor$ for every $b \in \Phi(\mathfrak{R})$ [40, Lemma 3.5].

2.3. *Divisors.* Let X be a normal variety, and let M be an \mathbb{R} -divisor on X . We denote the coefficient of a prime divisor D in M by $\mu_D M$. If every non-zero coefficient of M belongs to a set $\Phi \subseteq \mathbb{R}$, we write $M \in \Phi$. Writing $M = \sum m_i M_i$, where M_i are the distinct irreducible components, the notation $M^{\geq a}$ means $\sum_{m_i \geq a} m_i M_i$; that is, we ignore the components with coefficient $< a$. One similarly defines $M^{\leq a}, M^{>a}$, and $M^{<a}$.

We say M is *b-Cartier* if it is \mathbb{Q} -Cartier and if there is a birational contraction $\phi: W \rightarrow X$ from a normal variety such that ϕ^*M is Cartier.

Now let $f: X \rightarrow Z$ be a morphism to a normal variety. We say M is *horizontal* over Z if the induced map $\text{Supp } M \rightarrow Z$ is dominant; otherwise we say M is *vertical* over Z . If N is an \mathbb{R} -Cartier divisor on Z , we often denote f^*N by $N|_X$.

Again let $f: X \rightarrow Z$ be a morphism to a normal variety, and let M and L be \mathbb{R} -Cartier divisors on X . We say $M \sim L$ over Z (resp. $M \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} L$ over Z) (resp. $M \sim_{\mathbb{R}} L$ over Z) if there is a Cartier (resp. \mathbb{Q} -Cartier) (resp. \mathbb{R} -Cartier) divisor N on Z such that $M - L \sim f^*N$ (resp. $M - L \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} f^*N$) (resp. $M - L \sim_{\mathbb{R}} f^*N$). For a point $z \in Z$, we say $M \sim L$ over z if $M \sim L$ over Z perhaps after shrinking Z around z . The properties $M \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} L$ and $M \sim_{\mathbb{R}} L$ over z are similarly defined.

For a birational map $X \dashrightarrow X'$ (resp. $X \dashrightarrow X''$) (resp. $X \dashrightarrow X'''$) (resp. $X \dashrightarrow Y$) whose inverse does not contract divisors, and for an \mathbb{R} -divisor M on X , we usually denote the pushdown of M to X' (resp. X'') (resp. X''') (resp. Y) by M' (resp. M'') (resp. M''') (resp. M_Y).

LEMMA 2.4. *Let $f: X \rightarrow Z$ be a contraction between normal varieties, and let M be a Weil divisor on X . Assume that $M \sim 0$ over z for each $z \in Z$. Then $M \sim 0/Z$.*

Proof. Since $M \sim 0$ over z for each $z \in Z$, the sheaves $\mathcal{O}_X(M)$ and $f_*\mathcal{O}_X(M)$ are invertible. Moreover, the induced morphism $f^*f_*\mathcal{O}_X(M) \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_X(M)$ is surjective, hence it is an isomorphism. There is a Cartier divisor N such that $f_*\mathcal{O}_X(M) \simeq \mathcal{O}_Z(N)$. Then $M \sim f^*N$, so $M \sim 0/Z$. \square

2.5. *Linear systems.* Let X be a normal variety, and let M be an \mathbb{R} -divisor on X . We usually write $H^i(M)$ instead of $H^i(X, \mathcal{O}_X(\lfloor M \rfloor))$. We can describe $H^0(M)$ in terms of rational functions on X as

$$H^0(M) = \{0 \neq \alpha \in K \mid \text{Div}(\alpha) + M \geq 0\} \cup \{0\},$$

where K is the function field of X and $\text{Div}(\alpha)$ is the divisor associated to α .

Assume $h^0(M) \neq 0$. The *linear system* $|M|$ is defined as

$$|M| = \{N \mid 0 \leq N \sim M\} = \{\text{Div}(\alpha) + M \mid 0 \neq \alpha \in H^0(M)\}.$$

Note that $|M|$ is not equal to $|\lfloor M \rfloor|$ unless M is integral. The *fixed part* of $|M|$ is the \mathbb{R} -divisor F with the following property: if $G \geq 0$ is an \mathbb{R} -divisor and $G \leq N$ for every $N \in |M|$, then $G \leq F$. In particular, $F \geq 0$. We then define the *movable part* of $|M|$ to be $M - F$, which is defined up to linear equivalence. If $\langle M \rangle := M - \lfloor M \rfloor$, then the fixed part of $|M|$ is equal to $\langle M \rangle$ plus the fixed part of $|\lfloor M \rfloor|$. Moreover, if $0 \leq G \leq F$, then the fixed and movable parts of $|M - G|$ are $F - G$ and $M - F$, respectively.

Note that it is clear from the definition that the movable part of $|M|$ is an integral divisor but the fixed part is only an \mathbb{R} -divisor.

LEMMA 2.6. *Let X be a normal variety, and let M be an \mathbb{R} -Cartier \mathbb{R} -divisor on X . Assume $\phi: Y \rightarrow X$ is a projective birational morphism from a normal variety. Let F be the fixed part of $|M|$ and F_Y be the fixed part of $|M_Y|$ where $M_Y = \phi^*M$. Then*

- $\phi_*|M_Y| = |M|$;
- $\phi_*F_Y = F$; and
- if ϕ is a sufficiently high resolution, then $|M_Y - F_Y|$ is base point free.

Proof. If $N_Y \in |M_Y|$, then $0 \leq N_Y \sim M_Y$, hence $0 \leq \phi_*N_Y \sim M$, which means $\phi_*N_Y \in |M|$. On the other hand, if $N \in |M|$, then $0 \leq N \sim M$, hence $0 \leq \phi^*N \sim M_Y$, which means $\phi^*N \in |M_Y|$. Thus $\phi_*|M_Y| = |M|$.

Since $F_Y \leq N_Y$ for every $N_Y \in |M_Y|$, we get $\phi_*F_Y \leq N$ for every $N \in |M|$, and hence $\phi_*F_Y \leq F$. On the other hand, $|M_Y - F_Y|$ is movable, that is, it is base point free outside a codimension two closed subset of Y . Then $|M - \phi_*F_Y|$ is also base point free outside a codimension two closed subset of X which means $\phi_*F_Y \geq F$. Thus $\phi_*F_Y = F$.

Now let $\psi: W \rightarrow X$ be a resolution, and let F_W be the fixed part of $|M_W|$ where $M_W = \psi^*M$. By Hironaka’s work, there is a higher resolution $\pi: Y \rightarrow W$ such that if L_Y is the movable part of $|\pi^*(M_W - F_W)|$, then $|L_Y|$ is base point free. Pick $N_Y \in |M_Y|$, and let $N_W = \pi_*N_Y$. Since $F_W \leq N_W$, we get $\pi^*F_W \leq \pi^*N_W = N_Y$, hence $\pi^*F_W \leq F_Y$. Then the movable part of $|M_Y|$ coincides with the movable part of $|M_Y - \pi^*F_W = \pi^*(M_W - F_W)|$. Therefore, $|M_Y - F_Y| = |L_Y|$ is base point free. \square

2.7. *b-divisors.* We recall some definitions regarding b-divisors but not in full generality. Let X be a variety. A *b- \mathbb{R} -Cartier b-divisor over X* is the choice of a projective birational morphism $Y \rightarrow X$ from a normal variety and an \mathbb{R} -Cartier divisor M on Y up to the following equivalence: another projective birational morphism $Y' \rightarrow X$ from a normal variety and an \mathbb{R} -Cartier divisor M' defines the same b- \mathbb{R} -Cartier b-divisor if there is a common resolution $W \rightarrow Y$ and $W \rightarrow Y'$ on which the pullbacks of M and M' coincide.

A b- \mathbb{R} -Cartier b-divisor represented by some $Y \rightarrow X$ and M is *b-Cartier* if M is b-Cartier, i.e., its pullback to some resolution is Cartier.

2.8. *Pairs.* In this paper a *sub-pair* (X, B) consists of a normal quasi-projective variety X and an \mathbb{R} -divisor B such that $K_X + B$ is \mathbb{R} -Cartier. If the coefficients of B are at most 1, we say B is a *sub-boundary*, and if, in addition, $B \geq 0$, we say B is a *boundary*. A sub-pair (X, B) is called a *pair* if $B \geq 0$. (We allow coefficients of B to be larger than 1 for practical reasons.)

Let $\phi: W \rightarrow X$ be a log resolution of a sub-pair (X, B) . Let $K_W + B_W$ be the pullback of $K_X + B$. The *log discrepancy* of a prime divisor D on W with respect to (X, B) is $1 - \mu_D B_W$, and it is denoted by $a(D, X, B)$. We say (X, B) is *sub-lc* (resp. *sub-klt*) (resp. *sub- ϵ -lc*) if $a(D, X, B)$ is ≥ 0 (resp. > 0) (resp. $\geq \epsilon$) for every D . When (X, B) is a pair we remove the sub and say the pair is lc, etc. Note that if (X, B) is an lc pair, then the coefficients of B necessarily belong to $[0, 1]$. Also if (X, B) is ϵ -lc, then automatically $\epsilon \leq 1$ because $a(D, X, B) = 1$ for most D .

Let (X, B) be a sub-pair. A *non-klt place* of (X, B) is a prime divisor D on birational models of X such that $a(D, X, B) \leq 0$. A *non-klt centre* is the image on X of a non-klt place. When (X, B) is lc, a non-klt centre is also called an *lc centre*.

2.9. *Minimal model program (MMP).* We will use standard results of the minimal model program (cf. [36], [8]). Assume (X, B) is a pair and $X \rightarrow Z$ is a projective morphism. Assume H is an ample/ Z \mathbb{R} -divisor and that $K_X + B + H$ is nef/ Z . Suppose (X, B) is klt or that it is \mathbb{Q} -factorial divisorially log terminal (dlt). We can run an MMP/ Z on $K_X + B$ with scaling of H . If (X, B) is klt and if either $K_X + B$ or B is big/ Z , then the MMP terminates [8]. If (X, B) is \mathbb{Q} -factorial dlt, then in general we do not know whether the MMP terminates but we know that in some step of the MMP we reach a model Y on which $K_Y + B_Y$, the pushdown of $K_X + B$, is a limit of movable/ Z \mathbb{R} -divisors. Indeed, if the MMP terminates, then the claim is obvious. Otherwise the MMP produces an infinite sequence $X_i \dashrightarrow X_{i+1}$ of flips and a decreasing sequence λ_i of numbers in $(0, 1]$ such that $K_{X_i} + B_i + \lambda_i H_i$ is nef/ Z . By [8], [5, Th. 1.9], $\lim \lambda_i = 0$; in particular, if $Y := X_1$, then $K_Y + B_Y$ is the limit of the movable/ Z \mathbb{R} -divisors $K_Y + B_Y + \lambda_i H_Y$.

2.10. *Fano pairs.* Let (X, B) be a pair and $X \rightarrow Z$ a contraction. We say (X, B) is *log Fano* over Z if it is lc and $-(K_X + B)$ is ample over Z ; if $B = 0$ we just say X is Fano over Z . The pair is called *weak log Fano* over Z if it is lc and $-(K_X + B)$ is nef and big over Z ; if $B = 0$ we say X is *weak Fano* over Z . We say X is *of Fano type* over Z if (X, B) is klt weak log Fano over Z for some choice of B ; it is easy to see this is equivalent to existence of a big/ Z \mathbb{Q} -boundary (resp. \mathbb{R} -boundary) Γ so that (X, Γ) is klt and $K_X + \Gamma \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0/Z$ (resp. $\sim_{\mathbb{R}}$ instead of $\sim_{\mathbb{Q}}$).

Assume X is of Fano type over Z . Then we can run the MMP over Z on any \mathbb{R} -Cartier \mathbb{R} -divisor D on X that ends with some model Y [8]. If D_Y is nef over Z , we call Y a *minimal model* over Z for D . If D_Y is not nef/ Z , then there is a D_Y -negative extremal contraction $Y \rightarrow T/Z$ with $\dim Y > \dim T$ and we call Y a *Mori fibre space* over Z for D .

LEMMA 2.11. *Let (X, B) be an lc pair and $f: X \rightarrow Z$ be a contraction onto a smooth curve. Assume X is of Fano type over some non-empty open set $U \subseteq Z$. Further assume B is a \mathbb{Q} -boundary, $K_X + B \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0/Z$, and that the generic point of each non-klt centre of (X, B) is mapped into U . Then X is of Fano type over Z .*

Proof. This proof, which differs from the original proof, was suggested by Florin Ambro. Since X is of Fano type over U , there is a \mathbb{Q} -divisor Γ with coefficients in $[0, 1)$ such that Γ is big over U , (X, Γ) is klt over U , and $K_X + \Gamma \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$ over U . Then $K_X + \Gamma \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} D/Z$ for some \mathbb{Q} -divisor D that is vertical/ Z . Since Z is a curve, we can easily find a \mathbb{Q} -divisor C on Z so that if we replace D with $D + f^*C$, then the support of D is mapped into $Z \setminus U$ and $D \leq 0$.

Now $K_X + \Gamma - D \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0/Z$ and $\Gamma - D \geq 0$. Since the generic point of each non-klt centre of (X, B) is mapped into U and since (X, Γ) is klt over U , the pair

$$(X, (1-t)B + t(\Gamma - D))$$

is klt if $t > 0$ is a sufficiently small rational number. Therefore, X is of Fano type over Z as

$$K_X + (1-t)B + t(\Gamma - D) \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0/Z$$

and $(1-t)B + t(\Gamma - D)$ is big over Z . \square

LEMMA 2.12. *Let X be a projective variety of Fano type, and let $f: X \rightarrow Z$ be a contraction, where $\dim Z > 0$. Then Z is of Fano type.*

Proof. There is a big \mathbb{Q} -boundary Γ such that (X, Γ) is klt and $K_X + \Gamma \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$. In particular, X is normal; hence Z is normal too. Since Γ is big, we can modify it and assume $\Gamma \geq H \geq 0$ for some ample \mathbb{Q} -divisor H . In turn we can modify H ; hence assume $\Gamma \geq H \geq f^*A$ for some ample \mathbb{Q} -divisor $A \geq 0$. Let $\Delta := \Gamma - f^*A$. Then $K_X + \Delta \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0/Z$. Hence by [4, Th. 0.2], there is Δ_Z such that $K_X + \Delta \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} f^*(K_Z + \Delta_Z)$ and (Z, Δ_Z) is klt. Now letting $\Gamma_Z = \Delta_Z + A'$, where $A' \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} A$ is general, we see that $K_Z + \Gamma_Z \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$ and (Z, Δ_Z) is klt. Thus Z is of Fano type. \square

2.13. *Generalised polarised pairs.* For the basic theory of generalised polarised pairs, see [9, §4]. Below we recall some of the main notions and discuss some basic properties.

(1) A *generalised polarised pair* consists of

- a normal variety X' equipped with a projective morphism $X' \rightarrow Z$,
- an \mathbb{R} -divisor $B' \geq 0$ on X' , and
- a b - \mathbb{R} -Cartier b -divisor over X' represented by some projective birational morphism $X \xrightarrow{\phi} X'$ and \mathbb{R} -Cartier divisor M on X

such that M is nef/ Z and $K_{X'} + B' + M'$ is \mathbb{R} -Cartier, where $M' := \phi_*M$.

We usually refer to the pair by saying $(X', B' + M')$ is a generalised pair with data $X \xrightarrow{\phi} X' \rightarrow Z$ and M . Since a b - \mathbb{R} -Cartier b -divisor is defined birationally (see Section 2.7), in practice we will often replace X with a resolution and replace M with its pullback. When Z is not relevant we usually drop it and do not mention it. In this case one can just assume $X' \rightarrow Z$ is the identity. When Z is a point we also drop it but say the pair is projective.

Now we define generalised singularities. Replacing X we can assume ϕ is a log resolution of (X', B') . We can write

$$K_X + B + M = \phi^*(K_{X'} + B' + M')$$

for some uniquely determined B . For a prime divisor D on X the *generalised log discrepancy* $a(D, X', B' + M')$ is defined to be $1 - \mu_D B$.

We say $(X', B' + M')$ is *generalised lc* (resp. *generalised klt*) (resp. *generalised ϵ -lc*) if for each D , the generalised log discrepancy $a(D, X', B' + M')$ is ≥ 0 (resp. > 0) (resp. $\geq \epsilon$). A *generalised non-klt centre* of $(X', B' + M')$ is the image of a prime divisor D on birational models of X' with $a(D, X', B' + M') \leq 0$, and the *generalised non-klt locus* of the generalised pair is the union of all the generalised non-klt centres.

(2) Let $(X', B' + M')$ be a generalised pair as in (1). We say $(X', B' + M')$ is *generalised dlt* if it is generalised lc, and if η is the generic point of any generalised non-klt centre of $(X', B' + M')$, then (X', B') is log smooth near η and $M = \phi^*M'$ holds over a neighbourhood of η . If, in addition, the connected components of $\lfloor B' \rfloor$ are irreducible, we say the pair is *generalised purely log terminal* (plt). Note that when $M = 0$, then (X', B') is *generalised divisorially log terminal* (dlt) if and only if it is dlt in the usual sense.

The generalised dlt property is preserved under the MMP. Indeed, assume $(X', B' + M')$ is generalised dlt and that $X' \dashrightarrow X''/Z$ is a divisorial contraction or a flip with respect to $K_{X'} + B' + M'$. Replacing ϕ we can assume $X \dashrightarrow X''$ is a morphism. Let B'', M'' be the pushdowns of B', M' , and consider $(X'', B'' + M'')$ as a generalised pair with data $X \rightarrow X'' \rightarrow Z$ and M . Then $(X'', B'' + M'')$ is also generalised dlt because it is generalised lc and because $X' \dashrightarrow X''$ is an isomorphism over the generic point of any generalised non-klt centre of $(X'', B'' + M'')$.

(3) Let $(X', B' + M')$ be a generalised pair as in (1) and let $\psi: X'' \rightarrow X'$ be a projective birational morphism from a normal variety. Replacing ϕ we

can assume ϕ factors through ψ . We then let B'' and M'' be the pushdowns of B and M on X'' respectively. In particular,

$$K_{X''} + B'' + M'' = \psi^*(K_{X'} + B' + M').$$

If $B'' \geq 0$, then $(X'', B'' + M'')$ is also a generalised pair with data $X \rightarrow X'' \rightarrow Z$ and M . If $(X'', B'' + M'')$ is \mathbb{Q} -factorial generalised dlt and if every exceptional prime divisor of ψ appears in B'' with coefficients one, then we say $(X'', B'' + M'')$ is a *\mathbb{Q} -factorial generalised dlt model* of $(X', B' + M')$. Such models exist if $(X', B' + M')$ is generalised lc, by [9, Lemma 4.5].

(4) Let $(X', B' + M')$ be a generalised pair as in (1). Assume that D' on X' is an effective \mathbb{R} -divisor and that N on X is an \mathbb{R} -divisor that is nef/ Z such that $D' + N'$ is \mathbb{R} -Cartier where $N' = \phi_*N$. The *generalised lc threshold* of $D' + N'$ with respect to $(X', B' + M')$ is defined as

$$\sup\{s \mid (X', B' + sD' + M' + sN') \text{ is generalised lc}\},$$

where the pair in the definition comes with data $X \xrightarrow{\phi} X' \rightarrow Z$ and $M + sN$.

(5) We prove a connectedness principle similar to the usual one.

LEMMA 2.14 (Connectedness principle). *Let $(X', B' + M')$ be a generalised pair with data $X \xrightarrow{\phi} X' \rightarrow Z$ and M where $X' \rightarrow Z$ is a contraction. Assume $-(K_{X'} + B' + M')$ is nef and big over Z . Then the generalised non-klt locus of $(X', B' + M')$ is connected near each fibre of $X' \rightarrow Z$.*

Proof. We can assume ϕ is a log resolution. Write

$$K_X + B + M = \phi^*(K_{X'} + B' + M').$$

The generalised non-klt locus of $(X', B' + M')$ is just $\phi(\text{Supp } B^{\geq 1})$. We can write

$$-(K_X + B + M) \sim_{\mathbb{R}} A + C/Z$$

where A is ample and $C \geq 0$. Replacing X with a higher resolution and replacing A, C with their pullbacks, we can assume ϕ is a log resolution of $(X', B' + C')$ where $C' = \phi_*C$. Note that here we initially replace A, C with their pullbacks to the new resolution but then A may no longer be ample although it is nef and big. We then perturb A, C in the exceptional components so that A is ample again. Pick a sufficiently small $\epsilon > 0$, let $G \sim_{\mathbb{R}} M + \epsilon A/Z$ be general with coefficients less than 1, and let $\Delta = B + \epsilon C + G$. Then $K_X + \Delta \sim_{\mathbb{R}} 0/X'$, so $K_X + \Delta = \phi^*(K_{X'} + \Delta')$. Moreover, $\text{Supp } B^{\geq 1} = \text{Supp } \Delta^{\geq 1}$. Thus the non-klt locus of the pair (X', Δ') is equal to the generalised non-klt locus of $(X', B' + M')$. Therefore, the result follows from the usual connectedness principle [30, Th. 17.4] because

$$-(K_{X'} + \Delta') \sim_{\mathbb{R}} -(1 - \epsilon)(K_{X'} + B' + M')/Z$$

is nef and big over Z . □

(6) Let $(X', B' + M')$ be a projective generalised klt pair. Assume $A' := -(K_{X'} + B' + M')$ is nef and big. We show X' is of Fano type. Using the notation of (1), let $A = \phi^* A'$. Then $A \sim_{\mathbb{R}} H + G$ where H is ample and $G \geq 0$. Take a small $\epsilon > 0$ and a general $C \sim_{\mathbb{R}} \epsilon H + M$. Then

$$K_X + B + \epsilon G + C \sim_{\mathbb{R}} K_X + B + M + \epsilon A = \phi^*(K_{X'} + B' + M' + \epsilon A').$$

Hence if we let $\Delta = B + \epsilon G + C$, then $K_X + \Delta = \phi^*(K_{X'} + \Delta')$, which shows (X', Δ') is klt. Since $-(K_{X'} + \Delta')$ is nef and big, X' is of Fano type.

(7) Let $(X', B' + M')$ be a projective generalised lc pair where X' is of Fano type and $-(K_{X'} + B' + M')$ is nef. Assume $X'' \rightarrow X'$ is a birational morphism from a normal projective variety. Let $K_{X''} + B'' + M''$ be the pullback of $K_{X'} + B' + M'$ where B'' is the pushdown of B and M'' is the pushdown of M . We show X'' is of Fano type too, assuming every exceptional/ X' component of B'' has positive coefficient. There is a \mathbb{Q} -boundary Γ' such that (X', Γ') is klt and $-(K_{X'} + \Gamma')$ is nef and big. Let $K_{X''} + \Gamma''$ be the pullback of $K_{X'} + \Gamma'$. Let $\Delta'' = (1-t)\Gamma'' + tB''$ for some $t \in (0, 1)$ sufficiently close to 1. Then $(X'', \Delta'' + tM'')$ is generalised klt and $-(K_{X''} + \Delta'' + tM'')$ is nef and big. Now apply (5).

2.15. *Exceptional and non-exceptional pairs.* (1) Let (X, B) be a projective pair such that $K_X + B + P \sim_{\mathbb{R}} 0$ for some \mathbb{R} divisor $P \geq 0$. We say the pair is *non-exceptional* (resp. *strongly non-exceptional*) if we can choose P so that $(X, B + P)$ is not klt (resp. not lc). We say the pair is *exceptional* if $(X, B + P)$ is klt for every choice of P .

(2) Now let $(X', B' + M')$ be a projective generalised pair with data $\phi: X \rightarrow X'$ and M . Assume $K_{X'} + B' + M' + P' \sim_{\mathbb{R}} 0$ for some \mathbb{R} -divisor $P' \geq 0$. We say the pair is *non-exceptional* (resp. *strongly non-exceptional*) if we can choose P' so that $(X', B' + P' + M')$ is not generalised klt (resp. not generalised lc). We say the pair is *exceptional* if $(X', B' + P' + M')$ is generalised klt for every choice of P' . Here we consider $(X', B' + P' + M')$ as a generalised pair with data $\phi: X \rightarrow X'$ and M .

LEMMA 2.16. *Let $(X', B' + M')$ be a projective generalised pair such that $B' + M'$ is a \mathbb{Q} -divisor. If $(X', B' + M')$ is non-exceptional (resp. strongly non-exceptional), then there is a \mathbb{Q} -divisor $P' \geq 0$ such that $K_{X'} + B' + M' + P' \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$ and $(X', B' + M' + P')$ is not generalised klt (resp. generalised lc).*

Proof. By definition, there is an \mathbb{R} -divisor $P' \geq 0$ such that $K_{X'} + B' + M' + P' \sim_{\mathbb{R}} 0$ and $(X', B' + M' + P')$ is not generalised klt (resp. generalised lc). There exist numbers $0 \neq r_i \in \mathbb{R}$ and rational functions α_i on X' such that

$$P' = \sum r_i \text{Div}(\alpha_i) - (K_{X'} + B' + M').$$

Consider the set V of \mathbb{R} -divisors

$$\sum s_i \text{Div}(\alpha_i) - (K_{X'} + B' + M'),$$

where $s_i \in \mathbb{R}$ are arbitrary numbers. This is a rational affine space inside the space W of \mathbb{R} -divisors generated by the components of $K_{X'} + B' + M'$ and the components of all the $\text{Div}(\alpha_i)$. On the other hand, the space U of \mathbb{R} -divisors generated by all the components of P' is also a rational affine subspace of W . The intersection $U \cap V$ is a rational affine subspace of W and $P' \in U \cap V$. Therefore, there exist real numbers $a_j \in [0, 1]$ with $\sum a_j = 1$ and effective \mathbb{Q} -divisors $P'_j \in U \cap V$ sufficiently close to P' (in terms of coefficients) such that $P' = \sum a_j P'_j$. By construction, $K_{X'} + B' + M' + P'_j \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$ for each j , and

$$K_{X'} + B' + M' + P' = \sum a_j (K_{X'} + B' + M' + P'_j).$$

Thus there is j such that $(X', B' + M' + P'_j)$ is not generalised klt (resp. generalised lc). Now replace P' with P'_j . □

(3) The next lemma is useful to keep track of the exceptionality property when considering a birational model of X' .

LEMMA 2.17. *Let $(X', B' + M')$ be a projective generalised pair with data $X \xrightarrow{\phi} X'$ and M , and let $(X'', B'' + M'')$ be a projective generalised pair with data $X \xrightarrow{\psi} X''$ and M . (Here X and M are the same; in particular, $\psi\phi^{-1}: X' \dashrightarrow X''$ is a birational map.) Assume*

$$\psi^*(K_{X''} + B'' + M'') \geq \phi^*(K_{X'} + B' + M').$$

If $(X', B' + M')$ is exceptional, then $(X'', B'' + M'')$ is also exceptional.

Proof. Assume $(X'', B'' + M'')$ is not exceptional. Then there is

$$0 \leq P'' \sim_{\mathbb{R}} -(K_{X''} + B'' + M'')$$

such that $(X'', B'' + P'' + M'')$ is not generalised klt. Thus by the inequality in the statement, there is

$$0 \leq P' \sim_{\mathbb{R}} -(K_{X'} + B' + M')$$

such that $(X', B' + P' + M')$ is not generalised klt, contradicting the exceptionality of $(X', B' + M')$. □

2.18. *Complements.* (1) We first recall the definition for usual pairs. Let (X, B) be a pair where B is a boundary, and let $X \rightarrow Z$ be a contraction. Let $T = \lfloor B \rfloor$ and $\Delta = B - T$. An n -*complement* of $K_X + B$ over a point $z \in Z$ is of the form $K_X + B^+$ such that over some neighbourhood of z we have the following properties:

- (X, B^+) is lc,
- $n(K_X + B^+) \sim 0$, and
- $nB^+ \geq nT + \lfloor (n + 1)\Delta \rfloor$.

From the definition one sees that

$$-nK_X - nT - \lfloor (n + 1)\Delta \rfloor \sim nB^+ - nT - \lfloor (n + 1)\Delta \rfloor \geq 0$$

over some neighbourhood of z which, in particular, means the linear system

$$| -nK_X - nT - \lfloor (n + 1)\Delta \rfloor |$$

is not empty over z . Moreover, if $B^+ \geq B$, then $-n(K_X + B) \sim n(B^+ - B)$ over z , and hence $| -n(K_X + B) |$ is non-empty over z .

(2) Now let $(X', B' + M')$ be a projective generalised pair with data $\phi: X \rightarrow X'$ and M where $B' \in [0, 1]$. Let $T' = \lfloor B' \rfloor$ and $\Delta' = B' - T'$. An n -complement of $K_{X'} + B' + M'$ is of the form $K_{X'} + B'^+ + M'$, where

- $(X', B'^+ + M')$ is generalised lc,
- $n(K_{X'} + B'^+ + M') \sim 0$ and nM is b-Cartier, and
- $nB'^+ \geq nT' + \lfloor (n + 1)\Delta' \rfloor$.

From the definition one sees that

$$-nK_{X'} - nT' - \lfloor (n + 1)\Delta' \rfloor - nM' \sim nB'^+ - nT' - \lfloor (n + 1)\Delta' \rfloor \geq 0$$

which, in particular, means the linear system

$$| -nK_{X'} - nT' - \lfloor (n + 1)\Delta' \rfloor - nM' |$$

is not empty. Moreover, if $B'^+ \geq B'$, then $-n(K_{X'} + B' + M') \sim n(B'^+ - B')$, and hence $| -n(K_{X'} + B' + M') |$ is non-empty.

We can also define complements for generalised pairs in the relative setting, but for simplicity we will not deal with those.

2.19. *Bounded families of pairs.* A *couple* (X, D) consists of a normal projective variety X and a divisor D on X whose non-zero coefficients are all equal to 1; i.e., D is a reduced divisor. The reason we call (X, D) a couple rather than a pair is that we are concerned with D rather than $K_X + D$ and we do not want to assume $K_X + D$ to be \mathbb{Q} -Cartier or with nice singularities. Two couples (X, D) and (X', D') are isomorphic if there is an isomorphism $X \rightarrow X'$ mapping D onto D' .

We say that a set \mathcal{P} of couples is *birationally bounded* if there exist finitely many projective morphisms $V^i \rightarrow T^i$ of varieties and reduced divisors C^i on V^i such that for each $(X, D) \in \mathcal{P}$, there exist an i , a closed point $t \in T^i$, and a birational isomorphism $\phi: V_t^i \dashrightarrow X$ such that (V_t^i, C_t^i) is a couple and $E \leq C_t^i$, where V_t^i and C_t^i are the fibres over t of the morphisms $V^i \rightarrow T^i$ and $C^i \rightarrow T^i$ respectively, and E is the sum of the birational transform of D and the reduced exceptional divisor of ϕ . We say \mathcal{P} is *bounded* if we can choose ϕ to be an isomorphism.

A set \mathcal{R} of projective pairs (X, B) is said to be *log birationally bounded* (respectively *log bounded*) if the set of the corresponding couples $(X, \text{Supp } B)$

is birationally bounded (respectively bounded). Note that this does not put any condition on the coefficients of B , e.g., we are not requiring the coefficients of B to be in a finite set. If $B = 0$ for all the $(X, B) \in \mathcal{R}$, we usually remove the log and just say the set is birationally bounded (resp. bounded).

LEMMA 2.20. *Let $d, r \in \mathbb{N}$. Assume \mathcal{P} is a set of couples (X, D) where X is of dimension d and there is a very ample divisor A on X with $A^d \leq r$ and $A^{d-1}D \leq r$. Then \mathcal{P} is bounded.*

Proof. The very ample divisor A gives an embedding of X into some \mathbb{P}^n . When X is nondegenerate, i.e., X is not contained in any hyperplane in \mathbb{P}^n , it is well known that $n - d + 1 \leq r$ [12, Prop. 0]. Therefore, we can assume n is bounded depending only on d, r . We view both X and D as cycles on \mathbb{P}^n . By representability of the Chow functor on well-defined families of cycles [32, Ch. I, Th. 3.21], there exist reduced schemes R, S and reduced closed subschemes $W \subseteq \mathbb{P}^n \times R$ and $G \subseteq \mathbb{P}^n \times S$ so that if $p: W \rightarrow R$ and $q: G \rightarrow S$ denote projections, then for each $(X, D) \in \mathcal{P}$, there are closed points $r \in R$ and $s \in S$ such that X, D are isomorphic to the reduction of the fibres of p, q over r, s , respectively. Using stratification and replacing \mathcal{P} accordingly, we can assume R, S are integral and that p, q are surjective.

Since X is integral, we can assume W is integral too and that all the fibres of p are integral. On the other hand, we can assume that each component of G is mapped onto S . This ensures that the generic fibre of q is reduced. Since we work in characteristic zero, the geometric generic fibre is reduced too. Therefore, we can assume all the fibres of q are reduced; hence, in particular, X, D are isomorphic to the fibres of p, q over r, s , respectively.

Let $T = R \times S$, and consider $V := W \times S$ and $C := G \times R$ as closed subsets of $\mathbb{P}^n \times T$. Considering projections gives projective morphisms $h: V \rightarrow T$ and $e: C \rightarrow T$ such that if X, D, r, s are as above, then the fibres of h, e over $t = (r, s)$ are isomorphic to X and D , respectively. Let $U \subset T$ be the points parametrising the elements of \mathcal{P} . Replacing T with the closure of U and using stratification, etc, as above and replacing \mathcal{P} accordingly, we can assume that U is dense in T . We can assume V is still integral, and C is still reduced, and that each of its components dominates T . Then $C \subset V$ because for each $t \in U$, the fibre of $C \rightarrow T$ over t is inside the fibre of $V \rightarrow T$. Now each $(X, D) \in \mathcal{P}$ is the ‘‘fibre’’ of (V, C) over some closed point t . \square

Note that in the definition of a bounded set of couples we have $\phi^{-1}D \leq C_t^i$ but equality may not hold in general. The proof of the previous lemma shows that we can choose the families so that equality holds. For reference, we put this into the next lemma.

LEMMA 2.21. *Assume \mathcal{P} is a bounded set of couples. Then under the above notation, we can choose V^i, C^i and $V^i \rightarrow T^i$ so that for each $(X, D) \in \mathcal{P}$,*

there exist an i and a closed point $t \in T^i$ such that (V_t^i, C_t^i) is a couple isomorphic to (X, D) .

Proof. From the definition of bounded families we can see that there is n depending only on \mathcal{P} such that for each $(X, D) \in \mathcal{P}$, we can embed X in \mathbb{P}^n so that degree of X and degree of D (calculated with respect to a hyperplane) are both bounded. Now the claim follows from the proof of Lemma 2.20. \square

LEMMA 2.22. *Let \mathcal{P} be a bounded set of couples and $e \in \mathbb{R}^{>0}$. Then there is a finite set $I \subset \mathbb{R}$ depending only on \mathcal{P} and e satisfying the following. Let $(X, D) \in \mathcal{P}$, and assume $R \geq 0$ is a non-zero integral divisor on X such that $K_X + D + rR \equiv 0$ for some real number $r \geq e$. Then $r \in I$.*

Proof. We can choose an effective, very ample Cartier divisor A on X such that $(X, A + D)$ belongs to a bounded set of couples \mathcal{Q} determined by some presentation of \mathcal{P} (as in Section 2.19). Moreover, realising A^{d-1} as a 1-cycle inside the smooth locus of X , the intersection number $L \cdot A^{d-1}$ makes sense and is an integer for any integral divisor L . On the other hand, $(K_X + D) \cdot A^{d-1}$ belongs to some finite set depending only on \mathcal{Q} . Thus from

$$(K_X + D + rR) \cdot A^{d-1} = 0$$

and the assumption $r \geq e$, we deduce that $R \cdot A^{d-1}$ is bounded from above. Therefore, r belongs to some fixed finite set I . Choosing I to be minimal with this property, it depends only on \mathcal{P} and e . \square

2.23. *Cartier index in bounded families.*

LEMMA 2.24. *Let \mathcal{P} be a bounded set of couples. Then there is a natural number I depending only on \mathcal{P} satisfying the following. Assume X is projective with klt singularities and $M \geq 0$ an integral \mathbb{Q} -Cartier divisor on X so that $(X, \text{Supp } M) \in \mathcal{P}$. Then IK_X and IM are Cartier.*

Proof. We will use MMP similar to [19, Prop. 2.4]. Assume there is a sequence X_i, M_i of pairs and divisors as in the lemma such that if I_i is the smallest natural number so that $I_i K_{X_i}$ and $I_i M_i$ are Cartier, then the I_i form a strictly increasing sequence of numbers. Perhaps after replacing the sequence with a subsequence, by Lemma 2.21, we can assume there is a projective morphism $V \rightarrow T$ of varieties, a reduced divisor C on V , and a dense set of closed points $t_i \in T$ such that X_i is the fibre of $V \rightarrow T$ over t_i and $\text{Supp } M_i$ is the fibre of $C \rightarrow T$ over t_i . Since X_i are normal, replacing V with its normalisation and replacing C with its inverse image with reduced structure, we can assume V is normal.

Let $\phi: W \rightarrow V$ be a resolution of V , and let Δ be the reduced exceptional divisor of ϕ . Running an MMP/ V on $K_W + \Delta$ with scaling of an ample divisor,

we reach a model V' on which $K_{V'} + \Delta'$ is a limit of movable/ V divisors (2.9). Let $V' \rightarrow V$ be the induced morphism and X'_i, Δ'_i be the fibres of $V' \rightarrow T$ and $\Delta' \rightarrow T$ over t_i , respectively. (Note that $\Delta'_i = \Delta'|_{X'_i}$ and since we work in characteristic zero, we can assume Δ'_i is reduced.) Now we can assume X'_i are general fibres of $V' \rightarrow T$, hence Δ'_i is the reduced exceptional divisor of $X'_i \rightarrow X_i$. Since X_i is klt, we can write the pullback of K_{X_i} to X'_i as $K_{X'_i} + \Theta'_i$, where Θ'_i is exceptional with coefficients strictly less than 1. But then since X'_i are general fibres,

$$\Delta'_i - \Theta'_i = K_{X'_i} + \Delta'_i - (K_{X'_i} + \Theta'_i) \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} K_{X'_i} + \Delta'_i/X_i$$

is a limit of movable/ X_i divisors. Hence $\Delta'_i - \Theta'_i \leq 0$ by the general negativity lemma [5, Lemma 3.3], which in turn implies $\Delta'_i = \Theta'_i = 0$ as Δ'_i is reduced. Thus $X'_i \rightarrow X_i$ is a small contraction.

There is a \mathbb{Q} -divisor $\Gamma'_i \geq 0$ that is anti-ample over X_i . Rescaling it we can assume (X'_i, Γ'_i) is klt. In particular, $X'_i \rightarrow X_i$ is a $K_{X'_i} + \Gamma'_i$ -negative contraction of an extremal face of the Mori-Kleiman cone of X'_i because by the previous paragraph $K_{X'_i}$ is the pullback of K_{X_i} . Thus by the cone theorem [36, Th. 3.7], the Cartier index of $K_{X'_i}$ (resp. M'_i) and K_{X_i} (resp. M_i) are the same where M'_i is the pullback of M_i .

Now since X'_i is a general fibre, $K_{X'_i} = K_{V'}|_{X'_i}$, which shows that the Cartier index of $K_{X'_i}$ is bounded. Moreover, if $C' \subset V'$ denotes the birational transform of C , then $\text{Supp } M'_i$ is the fibre of $C' \rightarrow T$ over t_i . Thus replacing V, C with V', C' we can replace X_i with X'_i and replace M_i with M'_i , hence assume V is \mathbb{Q} -factorial, so C is \mathbb{Q} -Cartier.

Pick I so that IC is Cartier. Let $D_i = \text{Supp } M_i$. Then $D_i = C|_{X_i}$, hence ID_i is Cartier. This gives a contradiction if M_i are all irreducible. In general, let $h_i \in \mathbb{N}$ be the largest number such that $M_i - h_i D_i \geq 0$. Then $M_i - h_i D_i$ has at least one component less than M_i . Thus we can apply induction on the number of components of M_i that is a bounded number. \square

LEMMA 2.25. *Let d, r be natural numbers. Then there is a natural number I depending only on d, r satisfying the following. Suppose X is a projective variety with klt singularities and A is very ample on X with $A^d \leq r$ where $d = \dim X$. If L is a nef integral divisor on X with $A^{d-1}L \leq r$, then IL is Cartier.*

Proof. We can assume $\dim X > 1$; otherwise the statement holds trivially. Since A is very ample and $A^d \leq r$, X belongs to a bounded family of varieties and $A^{d-1}K_X$ is bounded from above. Replacing A with a bounded multiple and changing it linearly, and replacing r accordingly, we can assume (X, A) is dlt and $K_X + A$ is ample. We can assume $L_A := L|_A$ is integral. Moreover, L_A is nef, $(A|_A)^{d-2}L_A \leq r$ and $(A|_A)^{d-1} \leq r$. Thus by induction, there is

a natural number $l > 1$ depending only on d, r such that lK_A and lL_A are Cartier. Moreover, since

$$K_A + L_A = (K_X + A + L)|_A$$

is ample, we can choose l such that $l(K_A + L_A)$ is base point free, by effective base point freeness.

Now

$$h^1(l(K_X + A + L) - A) = 0$$

by the Kawamata-Viehweg vanishing theorem as

$$l(K_X + A + L) - A = K_X + L + (l - 1)(K_X + A + L).$$

Thus lifting sections from A , we deduce that

$$h^0(l(K_X + A + L)) > 0.$$

So $l(K_X + A + L) \sim N$, where N is effective and $A^{d-1}N$ is bounded from above. Then $(X, \text{Supp } N)$ belongs to a bounded family of couples. Hence by [Lemma 2.24](#), there is J depending only on d, r so that JN and JK_X are both Cartier. Therefore, lJL is Cartier too. Now let $I = lJ$. \square

The next lemma is useful to prove boundedness of certain birational models of weak Fano varieties.

LEMMA 2.26. *Let \mathcal{P} be a bounded set of klt weak Fano varieties. Let \mathcal{Q} be the set of normal projective varieties Y such that*

- K_Y is \mathbb{Q} -Cartier;
- there is $X \in \mathcal{P}$ and a birational map $Y \dashrightarrow X$; and
- if $\phi: W \rightarrow X$ and $\psi: W \rightarrow Y$ is a common resolution, then $\phi^*K_X \geq \psi^*K_Y$.

Then \mathcal{Q} is bounded.

Proof. Let Y, X be as in the statement. By [Lemma 2.24](#), there is $m \in \mathbb{N}$ depending only on \mathcal{P} such that $-mK_X$ is Cartier. By the effective base point free theorem [\[31\]](#), we can assume $|-mK_X|$ is base point free. Thus K_X has a klt m -complement $K_X + B^+$. Since $\phi^*K_X \geq \psi^*K_Y$, taking the crepant pullback of $K_X + B^+$ to Y gives a klt m -complement $K_Y + B_Y^+$ of K_Y where $B_Y^+ \geq \psi_*\phi^*B^+$ is big. Now apply [\[19, Th. 1.3\]](#). \square

2.27. Families of subvarieties. Let X be a normal projective variety. A bounded family \mathcal{G} of subvarieties of X is a family of (closed) subvarieties such that there are finitely many morphisms $V^i \rightarrow T^i$ of projective varieties together with morphisms $V^i \rightarrow X$ such that $V^i \rightarrow X$ embeds in X the fibres of $V^i \rightarrow T^i$ over closed points, and each member of the family \mathcal{G} is isomorphic to a fibre of some $V^i \rightarrow T^i$ over some closed point. Note that we can replace the $V^i \rightarrow T^i$ so that we can assume the set of points of T^i corresponding to members of \mathcal{G}

is dense in T^i . We say the family \mathcal{G} is a *covering family of subvarieties* of X if the union of its members contains some non-empty open subset of X . In particular, this means $V^i \rightarrow X$ is surjective for at least one i . When we say G is a *general member of \mathcal{G}* we mean there is i such that $V^i \rightarrow X$ is surjective, the set A of points of T^i corresponding to members of \mathcal{G} is dense in T^i , and G is the fibre of $V^i \rightarrow T^i$ over a general point of A . (In particular, G is among the general fibres of $V^i \rightarrow T^i$.)

Note that our definition of a bounded family here is compatible with [Section 2.19](#). Indeed assume \mathcal{G} is a family of subvarieties of X that is bounded according to the definition in [Section 2.19](#). Then there are finitely many possible Hilbert polynomials (with respect to a fixed ample divisor on X) of the members of the family. Consider the Hilbert scheme H of X given by the previously fixed finitely many polynomials, and take the universal family $\mathcal{H} \rightarrow H$. There are closed subvarieties T^i of H and irreducible components V^i of the reduction of \mathcal{V}^i , where $\mathcal{V}^i = T^i \times_H \mathcal{H} \rightarrow T^i$ is the induced family, so that each $G \in \mathcal{G}$ is isomorphic to a fibre of $V^i \rightarrow T^i$ over some closed point. By choosing the T^i carefully, we can assume that, for each i , the members of \mathcal{G} correspond to a dense set of fibres of $V^i \rightarrow T^i$. Since we obtained $V^i \rightarrow T^i$ from the Hilbert scheme, we have an induced morphism $V^i \rightarrow X$ that embeds in X the fibres of $V^i \rightarrow T^i$ over closed points. Therefore, \mathcal{G} is a bounded family of subvarieties according to the definition in the last paragraph.

The next lemma is useful in applications when we want to replace $V^i \rightarrow T^i$ so that $V^i \rightarrow X$ becomes generically finite; e.g., see the proof of [Lemma 3.12](#).

LEMMA 2.28. *Let $f: V \rightarrow T$ be a contraction between smooth projective varieties and $g: V \rightarrow X$ a surjective morphism to a normal projective variety. Let t be a closed point of T and F the fibre of f over t . Further assume*

- (1) *the induced map $F \rightarrow X$ is birational onto its image;*
- (2) *f is smooth over t ;*
- (3) *g is smooth over $g(\eta_F)$, and $g(\eta_F)$ is a smooth point of X , where η_F is the generic point of F .*

*Let S be a general hypersurface section of T of sufficiently large degree passing through t , let $U = f^*S$, and assume $U \rightarrow X$ is surjective. Then U and S are smooth, $U \rightarrow S$ is smooth over t , and $U \rightarrow X$ is smooth over $g(\eta_F)$.*

Proof. Let v be a general closed point of F , and let G be the fibre of g over $x := g(v)$. The scheme-theoretic intersection $F \cap G$ is the fibre of $F \rightarrow X$ over x , hence it is the reduced point $\{v\}$, by (1). In particular, $\mathcal{T}_{F,v} \cap \mathcal{T}_{G,v} = \{0\}$ where $\mathcal{T}_{F,v}$ and $\mathcal{T}_{G,v}$ are the tangent spaces to F and G at v . On the other hand, $F \cap G$ is also the fibre of the induced morphism $G \rightarrow T$ over t , so the fibre is again just $\{v\}$. Now since f is smooth over t , we have an exact sequence

of tangent spaces

$$0 \rightarrow \mathcal{T}_{F,v} \rightarrow \mathcal{T}_{V,v} \rightarrow \mathcal{T}_{T,t} \rightarrow 0.$$

Thus the kernel of the map $\mathcal{T}_{G,v} \rightarrow \mathcal{T}_{T,t}$ is $\mathcal{T}_{F,v} \cap \mathcal{T}_{G,v}$, hence $\mathcal{T}_{G,v} \rightarrow \mathcal{T}_{T,t}$ is injective. Therefore, $G \rightarrow T$ is a closed immersion near v , by Lemma 2.29 below.

Since S is a general hypersurface section of T of sufficiently large degree passing through t and since T is smooth, S is smooth too. Moreover, since G is smooth by (3), $U \cap G$ is smooth as well; indeed $U \cap G$ is smooth outside v by [20, Ch. III, Rem. 10.9.2] and also smooth at v as G is smooth and $G \rightarrow T$ is a closed immersion near v .

By construction, $U \rightarrow S$ is smooth over t , and U is a smooth variety outside F . Moreover, U is smooth at every point of F as F is the fibre of $U \rightarrow S$ over t that is smooth and $t \in S$ is smooth. Therefore, U is smooth.

Since g is smooth near G , $\dim G = \dim V - \dim X$. So

$$\dim U \cap G = \dim G - 1 = \dim V - \dim X - 1 = \dim U - \dim X,$$

where we think of the scheme-theoretic intersection $U \cap G$ as the fibre of $U \rightarrow X$ over x . Thus $U \rightarrow X$ is flat over x by [20, Ch. III, Exercise 10.9], which in turn implies $U \rightarrow X$ is smooth over x [20, Ch. III, Exercise 10.2] as $U \cap G$ is smooth. Therefore, $U \rightarrow X$ is smooth over $g(\eta_F)$. \square

LEMMA 2.29. *Let $h: X \rightarrow Z$ be a projective morphism of normal varieties, $x \in X$ be a closed point, and $z = h(x)$. Assume $h^{-1}\{z\} = \{x\}$, and assume the map on tangent spaces $\mathcal{T}_{X,x} \rightarrow \mathcal{T}_{Z,z}$ is injective. Then h is a closed immersion near x .*

Proof. Since $h^{-1}\{z\} = \{x\}$, by considering the Stein factorisation of h , we can see that h is a finite morphism over z . Thus shrinking X, Z we can assume h is finite. If U is an open neighbourhood of x , then $z \notin h(X \setminus U)$ because $h^{-1}\{z\} = \{x\}$. Hence $V = Z \setminus h(X \setminus U)$ is an open neighbourhood of z . Moreover, $h^{-1}V \subseteq U$. Indeed if $y \notin U$, then $y \in X \setminus U$, so $h(y) \in h(X \setminus U)$, and hence $h(y) \notin V$, which implies $y \notin h^{-1}V$. Thus every open neighbourhood of x contains the inverse image of some open neighbourhood of z . This implies the induced map on stalks $(h_*\mathcal{O}_X)_z \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{X,x}$ is an isomorphism. Thus $\mathcal{O}_{X,x}$ is a finitely generated $\mathcal{O}_{Z,z}$ -module as $h_*\mathcal{O}_X$ is coherent.

On the other hand, since the map $\mathcal{T}_{X,x} \rightarrow \mathcal{T}_{Z,z}$ is injective, the dual map $m_z/m_z^2 \rightarrow m_x/m_x^2$ is surjective, where m_z and m_x are the maximal ideals of $\mathcal{O}_{Z,z}$ and $\mathcal{O}_{X,x}$. Now apply [20, II, Lemma 7.4] to show the homomorphism $\mathcal{O}_{Z,z} \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{X,x}$ is surjective, which implies $\mathcal{O}_Z \rightarrow h_*\mathcal{O}_X$ is surjective near z . Therefore, h is a closed immersion near x since h is finite. \square

2.30. *Potentially birational divisors.* Let X be a normal projective variety, and let D be a big \mathbb{Q} -Cartier \mathbb{Q} -divisor on X . We say that D is *potentially*

birational [18, Def. 3.5.3] if for any pair x and y of general closed points of X , possibly switching x and y , we can find $0 \leq \Delta \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} (1 - \epsilon)D$ for some $0 < \epsilon < 1$ such that (X, Δ) is not klt at y but (X, Δ) is lc at x and $\{x\}$ is a non-klt centre.

If D is potentially birational, then $|K_X + \lceil D \rceil|$ defines a birational map [17, Lemma 2.3.4].

2.31. *Non-klt centres.* In this subsection we study non-klt centres of pairs. In several places in this paper we use a standard technique to create covering families of non-klt centres.

(1) The next statement is a variant of [18, Lemma 3.2.3].

LEMMA 2.32. *Let (X, B) be a projective pair where B is a \mathbb{Q} -boundary, and let $D \geq 0$ be an ample \mathbb{Q} -divisor. Let $x, y \in X$ be closed points, and assume (X, B) is klt near x , $(X, B + D)$ is lc near x with a unique non-klt centre G containing x , and $(X, B + D)$ is not klt near y . Then there exist rational numbers $0 \leq t \ll s \leq 1$ and a \mathbb{Q} -divisor $0 \leq E \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} tD$ such that $(X, B + sD + E)$ is not klt near y but it is lc near x with a unique non-klt place, and the centre of this non-klt place is G .*

Proof. Let $\phi: W \rightarrow X$ be a log resolution. Then $\phi^*D \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} A + C$, where $A \geq 0$ is ample and $C \geq 0$. Let $C' = \phi_*C$ and $D' = \phi_*(A + C)$. Replacing X with a higher resolution we can assume ϕ is a log resolution of $(X, B + D + C')$. Note that here we pull back A, C to the new resolution, so A may no longer be ample but it is nef and big. Hence perturbing coefficients in the exceptional components, we can make A ample again. Changing A up to \mathbb{Q} -linear equivalence, we can assume A is general, so ϕ is a log resolution of $(X, B + D + D')$.

Write

$$K_W + \Gamma_{s,t} = \phi^*(K_X + B + sD + tD').$$

Let T be the sum of the components of $\lceil \Gamma_{1,0}^{\geq 0} \rceil$ whose image contains x . By assumption, $\phi(S) = G$ for every component S of T . Now pick $t > 0$ sufficiently small, and let s be the lc threshold of D with respect to $(X, B + tD')$ near x . Then s is sufficiently close to 1. Moreover,

$$\lceil \Gamma_{s,t}^{\geq 0} \rceil \subseteq \lceil \Gamma_{1,t}^{\geq 0} \rceil = \lceil \Gamma_{1,0}^{\geq 0} \rceil,$$

so any component of $\lceil \Gamma_{s,t}^{\geq 0} \rceil$ whose image contains x is a component of T . Now possibly after perturbing the coefficients of C and replacing A accordingly, we can assume $\lceil \Gamma_{s,t}^{\geq 0} \rceil$ has only one component S such that $x \in \phi(S)$. Since S is a component of T , we have $\phi(S) = G$.

If G contains y , then let $E = tD'$; hence $(X, B + sD + E)$ is not klt near y . We can then assume G does not contain y . Since $(X, B + D)$ is not klt near y ,

it has a non-klt centre $J \neq G$ containing y . By assumption, G is the only non-klt centre containing x , so J does not contain x . Thus there is an effective $\tilde{D} \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} D$ containing J but not containing x . In particular, we can choose a small $\alpha > 0$ (depending on s) so that $(X, B + sD + tD' + \alpha\tilde{D})$ is not lc near y . Now let $E = tD' + \alpha\tilde{D}$ and rename $t + \alpha$ to t . \square

(2) Let X be a normal projective variety of dimension d and D be an ample \mathbb{Q} -divisor. Assume $\text{vol}(D) > (2d)^d$. Then there is a bounded family of subvarieties of X such that for each pair $x, y \in X$ of general closed points, there is a member G of the family and there is $0 \leq \Delta \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} D$ such that (X, Δ) is lc near x with a unique non-klt place whose centre contains x , that centre is G , and (X, Δ) is not klt at y [18, Lemma 7.1].

Now assume A is an ample and effective \mathbb{Q} -divisor. Pick a pair $x, y \in X$ of general closed points and let Δ and G be as above chosen for x, y . If $\dim G = 0$, or if $\dim G > 0$ and $\text{vol}(A|_G) \leq d^d$, then we let $G' := G$ and let $\Delta' := \Delta + A$. On the other hand, if $\dim G > 0$ and $\text{vol}(A|_G) > d^d$, then there is $0 \leq \Delta' \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} \Delta + A$ and there is a proper subvariety $G' \subset G$ such that (X, Δ') is lc near x with a unique non-klt place whose centre contains x , that centre is G' , and (X, Δ') is not klt at y , by [33, Ths. 6.8.1 and 6.8.1.3] and by Lemma 2.32. Repeating this process $d - 1$ times, we find $0 \leq \Delta^{(d-1)} \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} D + (d - 1)A$ and a proper subvariety $G^{(d-1)} \subset G$ such that $(X, \Delta^{(d-1)})$ is lc near x with a unique non-klt place whose centre contains x , that centre is $G^{(d-1)}$, and $(X, \Delta^{(d-1)})$ is not klt at y , and either $\dim G^{(d-1)} = 0$ or $\text{vol}(A|_{G^{(d-1)}}) \leq d^d$. In particular, all such centres $G^{(d-1)}$ form a bounded family of subvarieties of X .

(3) We will need the next lemma in Section 3 when we define adjunction on non-klt places.

LEMMA 2.33. *Assume that*

- (X, B) is an lc pair,
- $G \subset X$ is a subvariety with normalisation F ,
- X is \mathbb{Q} -factorial near the generic point of G , and
- there is a unique non-klt place of (X, B) whose centre is G .

Then if (Y, B_Y) is a \mathbb{Q} -factorial dlt model of (X, B) and S is a component of $[B_Y]$ mapping onto G , then the induced morphism $h: S \rightarrow F$ is a contraction. Moreover, the only non-klt centre of (X, B) containing G is G itself.

Proof. If G is a divisor, then the claim is obvious, so we can assume $\dim G < \dim S$; in particular, S is exceptional over X . Let Π be the fibre of $Y \rightarrow X$ over a general closed point g of G . Then Π is connected, and since X is \mathbb{Q} -factorial near g , Π is contained in the union of the exceptional divisors of $Y \rightarrow X$, hence contained in $[B_Y]$. Moreover, by the connectedness principle, $[B_Y]$ is connected near Π .

Let R be the support of $(\lfloor B_Y \rfloor - S)|_S$. We show that the induced morphism $R \rightarrow F$ is not surjective. Assume not. Then some component V of R maps onto G . As V is a non-klt centre of (Y, B_Y) , there is a non-klt place of (Y, B_Y) with centre V , and hence there is a non-klt place of (X, B) with centre G and this place is not S . This is a contradiction.

We claim that Π is contained in S . Assume not. Then since Π is connected, and since $\lfloor B_Y \rfloor$ is connected near Π and $\Pi \subset \lfloor B_Y \rfloor$, there is a component T of $\lfloor B_Y \rfloor - S$ such that $\text{Supp } T|_S$ intersects Π . This contradicts the previous paragraph. Thus Π is contained in S . In particular, Π is the fibre of h over g , and hence h has connected general fibres. This implies h is a contraction as F is normal. Finally, applying the previous paragraph once more shows that in fact Π does not intersect $\lfloor B_Y \rfloor - S$. Therefore, no lc centre of (X, B) contains G other than G itself. \square

2.34. *Pseudo-effective thresholds.*

LEMMA 2.35. *Let \mathcal{P} be a log bounded set of log smooth projective pairs (X, B) . Then there is a number $\lambda > 0$ such that if $(X, B) \in \mathcal{P}$ and if K_X is not pseudo-effective, then $K_X + \lambda B$ is not pseudo-effective.*

Proof. Perhaps after replacing \mathcal{P} , we can assume there exist a smooth projective morphism $f: V \rightarrow T$ of smooth varieties and a reduced divisor S on V with simple normal crossing singularities such that if $(X, B) \in \mathcal{P}$, then X is a fibre of f over some closed point and $\text{Supp } B$ is inside the restriction of S to X . Replacing B , we can assume $B = S|_X$. Moreover, adding to S a general ample/ T divisor, we can assume S and $K_V + S$ are ample/ T .

Let

$$t = \inf\{s \mid K_V + sS \text{ is pseudo-effective over } T\}.$$

We can assume $t > 0$. Run an MMP on K_V over T with scaling of S that terminates by [8]. This gives a minimal model (V', tS') of (V, tS) over T . Then $K_{V'} + tS'$ is semi-ample over T but not big; hence it defines a non-birational contraction $V' \rightarrow W/T$. Fix some $0 < \lambda < t$. Assume F is a general fibre of f and F' is the corresponding fibre of $V' \rightarrow T$. Then $K_{F'} + \lambda S'|_{F'}$ is not pseudo-effective, and hence $K_F + \lambda S|_F$ is also not pseudo-effective. \square

2.36. *Numerical Kodaira dimension.* Let D be an \mathbb{R} -Cartier \mathbb{R} -divisor on a normal projective variety X . The *numerical Kodaira dimension* of D is denoted by $\kappa_\sigma(D)$ following [38]. We replace X by a resolution and replace D by its pullback. If D is not pseudo-effective, we let $\kappa_\sigma(D) = -\infty$. Otherwise $\kappa_\sigma(D)$ is the largest integer r such that

$$\limsup_{m \rightarrow \infty} \frac{h^0(\lfloor mD \rfloor + A)}{m^r} > 0$$

for some ample Cartier divisor A .

When D is pseudo-effective, a kind of Zariski decomposition $D = P_\sigma(D) + N_\sigma(D)$ is defined in [38], where $P_\sigma(D)$ is pseudo-effective and $N_\sigma(D) \geq 0$.

LEMMA 2.37. *Let \mathcal{P} be a bounded set of smooth projective varieties X with $\kappa_\sigma(K_X) = 0$. Then there is a number $l \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $h^0(lK_X) \neq 0$ for every $X \in \mathcal{P}$.*

Proof. Perhaps after replacing \mathcal{P} , we can assume there is a smooth projective morphism $f: V \rightarrow T$ of smooth varieties such that every $X \in \mathcal{P}$ appears as a fibre of f over some closed point. Then by [17, Th. 1.8 (2)], $\kappa_\sigma(K_F) = 0$ for every fibre F of f . Applying [14] to the geometric generic fibre and applying semi-continuity of cohomology shows that there is $l \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $h^0(lK_F) \neq 0$ for every fibre F . \square

2.38. *Volume of divisors.* Recall that the volume of an \mathbb{R} -divisor D on a normal projective variety X of dimension d is defined as

$$\text{vol}(D) = \limsup_{m \rightarrow \infty} \frac{h^0(\lfloor mD \rfloor)}{m^d/d!}.$$

LEMMA 2.39. *Let X be a \mathbb{Q} -factorial normal projective variety of dimension d , D be an \mathbb{R} -divisor with $\kappa_\sigma(D) > 0$, and A be an ample \mathbb{Q} -divisor. Then $\lim_{m \rightarrow \infty} \text{vol}(mD + A) = \infty$.*

Proof. Replacing X with a resolution and replacing A appropriately, we can assume X is smooth. Replacing D with $P_\sigma(D)$, we can assume $N_\sigma(D) = 0$. Let C be a curve cut out by general members of $|lA|$ for some sufficiently divisible $l \in \mathbb{N}$. By [38, Ch. V, Th. 1.3], we can assume C does not intersect $\text{Bs} | \lfloor mD \rfloor + A |$ for any $m \in \mathbb{N}$. In particular, by Lemma 2.6, for each m , there is a resolution $\phi: W \rightarrow X$ such that the movable part M of $|\phi^*(\lfloor mD \rfloor + A)|$ is base point free and the support of the fixed part F does not intersect $\phi^{-1}C$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} \text{vol}(mD + 2A) &\geq \text{vol}(\lfloor mD \rfloor + 2A) = \text{vol}(\phi^*(\lfloor mD \rfloor + 2A)) \\ &\geq \text{vol}(M + \phi^*A) \geq M \cdot (\phi^*A)^{d-1} \\ &= \phi^*(\lfloor mD \rfloor + A) \cdot (\phi^*A)^{d-1} = (\lfloor mD \rfloor + A) \cdot C. \end{aligned}$$

Since $\kappa_\sigma(D) > 0$, we have $D \cdot C > 0$, so the intersection number $(\lfloor mD \rfloor + A) \cdot C$ is not a bounded function of m ; hence $\text{vol}(mD + 2A)$ is not bounded. Thus $\lim_{m \rightarrow \infty} \text{vol}(2mD + 2A) = \infty$, which implies the lemma. \square

LEMMA 2.40. *Let $d \in \mathbb{N}$, and let \mathcal{P} be a set of pairs (X, A) where X is smooth projective of dimension $\leq d$ with $\kappa_\sigma(K_X) > 0$ and A is very ample. Then for each $q \in \mathbb{N}$, there is $p \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for every $(X, A) \in \mathcal{P}$, we have $\text{vol}(pK_X + A) > q$.*

Proof. If the statement is not true, then there exist a number $q \in \mathbb{N}$, a strictly increasing sequence of numbers $p_i \in \mathbb{N}$, and a sequence of pairs $(X_i, A_i) \in \mathcal{P}$ such that $\text{vol}(p_i K_{X_i} + A_i) \leq q$ for every i . Since A_i is very ample, we may assume A_i is smooth, and since $\text{vol}(A_i) \leq q$, the pairs (X_i, A_i) form a log bounded family. Replacing the sequence, we can assume there is a projective morphism $f: V \rightarrow T$ of smooth varieties and a reduced divisor $A \geq 0$ on V that is simple normal crossing over T and such that for each i , X_i appears as a fibre of f over some closed point and that $A_i = A|_{X_i}$.

Fix a general fibre F of f , and let $A_F = A|_F$. Then by [17, Th. 1.8 (3)], for each i ,

$$\text{vol}\left(K_F + \frac{1}{p_i}A_F\right) = \text{vol}\left(K_{X_i} + \frac{1}{p_i}A_i\right).$$

Hence

$$\text{vol}(p_i K_F + A_F) = \text{vol}(p_i K_{X_i} + A_i) \leq q.$$

Pick l so that $lA_F \sim H_F + L_F$ where H_F is ample and L_F is big. Then $\text{vol}(lp_i K_F + H_F) \leq l^d q$. This contradicts Lemma 2.39. \square

2.41. *The restriction exact sequence.* Let X be a normal projective variety, S be a normal prime divisor, and L be an integral \mathbb{Q} -Cartier divisor on X . We have the exact sequence

$$0 \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_X(-S) \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_X \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_S \rightarrow 0$$

from which we get the exact sequence

$$\mathcal{O}_X(L) \otimes_{\mathcal{O}_X} \mathcal{O}_X(-S) \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_X(L) \otimes_{\mathcal{O}_X} \mathcal{O}_X \rightarrow \mathcal{F} := \mathcal{O}_X(L) \otimes_{\mathcal{O}_X} \mathcal{O}_S \rightarrow 0,$$

which may not be exact on the left. This in turn gives the exact sequence

$$0 \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_X(L - S) \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_X(L) \rightarrow \mathcal{F} \rightarrow 0.$$

Note that \mathcal{F} is an \mathcal{O}_S -module.

LEMMA 2.42. *Assume (X, B) is dlt for some boundary B and that S is \mathbb{Q} -Cartier. Let U be the largest open subset of X on which L is Cartier. If the codimension of the complement of $S \cap U$ in S is at least two, then $\mathcal{F} \simeq \mathcal{O}_S(L|_S)$.*

Proof. This is a generalisation of [36, Prop. 5.26]. Note that $L|_S$ is well defined up to linear equivalence and it is an integral divisor. Let A be an ample Cartier divisor on X . Since (X, B) is dlt and S is \mathbb{Q} -Cartier, by duality [36, Cor. 5.27] and Serre vanishing, $h^i(L - nA) = 0$ and $h^i(L - S - nA) = 0$ for any $i < d = \dim X$ and any $n \gg 0$. Thus using the third exact sequence above we get the exact sequence

$$H^i(\mathcal{O}_X(L - nA)) \rightarrow H^i(\mathcal{F}(-nA)) \rightarrow H^{i+1}(\mathcal{O}_X(L - S - nA))$$

and the vanishing $h^i(\mathcal{F}(-nA)) = 0$ for $i < d - 1$ and any $n \gg 0$. This implies \mathcal{F} is a Cohen-Macaulay sheaf on S [36, Cor. 5.72]. In particular, \mathcal{F} is S_2 , and

hence \mathcal{F} is determined by $\mathcal{F}|_{U \cap S}$. On the other hand, $\mathcal{O}_S(L|_S)$ is reflexive; hence it is also determined by its restriction to $S \cap U$. Now the result follows from the fact that on $S \cap U$, the two sheaves \mathcal{F} and $\mathcal{O}_S(L|_S)$ are isomorphic. \square

2.43. *Descent of nef divisors.*

LEMMA 2.44. *Let $f: X \rightarrow Z$ be a contraction from a smooth projective variety to a normal projective variety with rationally connected general fibres. Assume M is a nef Cartier divisor on X such that $M \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$ on the generic fibre of f . Then there exist resolutions $\phi: W \rightarrow X$ and $\psi: V \rightarrow Z$ such that the induced map $W \dashrightarrow V$ is a morphism and $\phi^*M \sim 0/V$.*

Proof. Since M is nef and $M \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$ on the generic fibre of f , $M \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} N$ for some N whose support is vertical/ Z ; i.e., its components do not intersect the generic fibre. Thus if A is the pullback of a sufficiently ample divisor on Z , then $\kappa(A + M) = \dim Z$ and $\kappa(A - M) = \dim Z$. In particular,

$$\nu(A + M) = \kappa_{\sigma}(A + M) \leq \kappa_{\sigma}(A + M + A - M) = \dim Z,$$

which means $A + M$ is a nef and *good* divisor. Therefore, applying [25, Prop. 2.1], we can find ϕ and ψ so that $\phi^*(A + M) \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0/V$; hence $\phi^*M \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0/V$.

Replacing X with W and replacing Z with V , we can assume $M \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0/Z$. Since the general fibres of f are rationally connected, K_X is not pseudo-effective over Z . Running an MMP/ Z on K_X with scaling of some ample divisor as in [8], we get a Mori fibre space $X' \rightarrow T'/Z$. Since M is Cartier and $M \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0/Z$, M' is Cartier, by the cone theorem [36, Th. 3.7], where M' is the pushdown of M . Moreover, $M' \sim 0/T'$ again by [36, Th. 3.7]; hence M' is the pullback of some nef Cartier divisor N' on T' . Let T be a resolution of T' . Then the general fibres of $T \rightarrow Z$ are rationally connected as they are dominated by the general fibres of f . Now replace X with T and replace M with the pullback of N' to T . Then apply induction on dimension. \square

2.45. *Pairs with large boundaries.*

LEMMA 2.46. *Let (X, B) be a projective \mathbb{Q} -factorial dlt pair of dimension d , and let M be a nef Cartier divisor. Let $a > 2d$ be a real number. Then any MMP on $K_X + B + aM$ is M -trivial; i.e., the extremal rays in the process intersect M trivially. If M is big, then $K_X + B + aM$ is also big.*

Proof. The fact that any MMP on $K_X + B + aM$ is M -trivial follows from boundedness of extremal rays [26]. The Cartier condition and the nefness of M is preserved in the process by the cone theorem [36, Th. 3.7]. Now assume M is big. It is enough to show $K_X + aM$ is big. If $K_X + aM$ is not big, then $K_X + (a - \delta)M$ is not pseudo-effective for any small $\delta > 0$. Then we can run an MMP on $K_X + (a - \delta)M$, which terminates with a Mori fibre space $Y \rightarrow T$ [8].

By boundedness of extremal rays [26], $M_Y \equiv 0/T$, which is not possible as M_Y is big. \square

2.47. *Divisors with log discrepancy close to 0.*

LEMMA 2.48. *Let $d \in \mathbb{N}$ and $\Phi \subset [0, 1]$ be a DCC set. Then there is $\epsilon > 0$ depending only on d and Φ such that if (X, B) is a projective pair and D is a prime divisor on birational models of X satisfying*

- (X, B) is lc of dimension d and $(X, 0)$ is klt,
- $K_X + B \sim_{\mathbb{R}} 0$ and $B \in \Phi$, and
- $a(D, X, B) < \epsilon$,

then $a(D, X, B) = 0$.

Proof. If the lemma does not hold, then there exist a decreasing sequence ϵ_i of numbers approaching 0 and a sequence $(X_i, B_i), D_i$ of pairs and divisors as in the statement such that $0 < a(D_i, X_i, B_i) < \epsilon_i$. If D_i is a divisor on X_i , we let $X'_i \rightarrow X_i$ be the identity morphism. If not, then since $(X_i, 0)$ is klt, there is a birational morphism $X'_i \rightarrow X_i$ extracting only D_i . Let $K_{X'_i} + B'_i$ be the pullback of $K_{X_i} + B_i$, and let $b_i = 1 - a(D_i, X_i, B_i)$, which is the coefficient of D_i in B'_i . Note that $B'_i \in \Phi' := \Phi \cup \{b_i \mid i \in \mathbb{N}\}$. Replacing the sequence, we can assume Φ' is a DCC set. Now we get a contradiction, by [18, Th. 1.5], because $\{b_i \mid i \in \mathbb{N}\}$ is not finite. \square

2.49. *Boundary coefficients close to 1.*

PROPOSITION 2.50. *Let $d, p \in \mathbb{N}$, and let $\Phi \subset [0, 1]$ be a DCC set. Then there is $\epsilon \in \mathbb{R}^{>0}$ depending only on d, p, Φ satisfying the following. Let $(X', B' + M')$ be a generalised pair of dimension d with data $\phi: X \rightarrow X' \rightarrow Z$ and M such that*

- $B' \in \Phi \cup (1 - \epsilon, 1]$ and pM is b-Cartier,
- $-(K_{X'} + B' + M')$ is a limit of movable/ Z \mathbb{R} -divisors,
- there is

$$0 \leq P' \sim_{\mathbb{R}} -(K_{X'} + B' + M')/Z$$

such that $(X', B' + P' + M')$ is generalised lc, and

- X' is \mathbb{Q} -factorial of Fano type/ Z .

Let Θ' be the boundary whose coefficients are the same as B' except that we replace each coefficient in $(1 - \epsilon, 1)$ with 1. That is, $\Theta' = (B')^{\leq 1-\epsilon} + [(B')^{>1-\epsilon}]$. Run an MMP/ Z on $-(K_{X'} + \Theta' + M')$, and let X'' be the resulting model. Then

- (1) $(X', \Theta' + M')$ is generalised lc,
- (2) the MMP does not contract any component of $[\Theta']$,
- (3) $-(K_{X''} + \Theta'' + M'')$ is nef/ Z , and
- (4) $(X'', \Theta'' + M'')$ is generalised lc.

Proof. Note that X' is \mathbb{Q} -factorial of Fano type/ Z , so we can run MMP on any divisor on X' .

(1) Assume this is not true. Then there exist a decreasing sequence ϵ_i of numbers approaching 0 and a sequence $(X'_i, B'_i + M'_i)$ of generalised pairs as in the statement such that if Θ'_i is the divisor derived from B'_i using ϵ_i , then $(X'_i, \Theta'_i + M'_i)$ is not generalised lc. There exist boundaries $B'_i \leq \Gamma'_i \leq \Theta'_i$ with $\Gamma'_i \in \Phi \cup (1 - \epsilon_i, 1]$ and a component D'_i of Γ'_i with coefficient $t_i \in (1 - \epsilon_i, 1)$ such that t_i is the generalised lc threshold of D'_i with respect to $(X'_i, \Gamma'_i - t_i D'_i + M'_i)$. Replacing the sequence we can assume the union of the coefficients of all the Γ'_i is a DCC set. Then we get a contradiction by the ACC for generalised lc thresholds [9, Th. 1.5].

(2) If this is not true, then there exist a decreasing sequence ϵ_i of numbers approaching 0, and a sequence $(X'_i, B'_i + M'_i)$ of generalised pairs as in the statement such that if Θ'_i is the divisor derived from B'_i using ϵ_i , then the MMP contracts some component S'_i of $[\Theta'_i]$. Since all our assumptions are preserved under the MMP, we may assume the first step of the MMP is a birational contraction $\pi_i: X'_i \rightarrow \tilde{X}'_i$ which contracts S'_i . Let R'_i be the corresponding extremal ray.

As $-(K_{X'} + B' + M')$ is a limit of movable/ Z \mathbb{R} -divisors, $-(K_{X'_i} + B'_i + M'_i) \cdot R'_i \geq 0$. Moreover, $S'_i \cdot R'_i < 0$, and if \bar{B}'_i is the same as B'_i except that we increase the coefficient of S'_i to 1, then

$$B'_i \leq \bar{B}'_i \leq \Theta'_i \text{ and } -(K_{X'_i} + \bar{B}'_i + M'_i) \cdot R'_i \geq 0.$$

Therefore, there exist boundaries $\bar{B}'_i \leq \Gamma'_i \leq \Theta'_i$ with $\Gamma'_i \in \Phi \cup (1 - \epsilon_i, 1]$ such that $-(K_{X'_i} + \Gamma'_i + M'_i) \cdot R'_i = 0$ and S'_i is a component of $[\Gamma'_i]$. Moreover, there is a component D'_i of Γ'_i with coefficient $t_i \in (1 - \epsilon_i, 1)$ such that $D'_i \cdot R'_i > 0$. Thus

$$0 = a(S'_i, X'_i, \Gamma'_i + M'_i) = a(S'_i, \tilde{X}'_i, \tilde{\Gamma}'_i + \tilde{M}'_i)$$

but

$$a(S'_i, \tilde{X}'_i, \tilde{\Gamma}'_i + \delta_i \tilde{D}'_i + \tilde{M}'_i) = -\mu_{S'_i} \pi_i^* \delta_i D'_i < 0$$

for any $\delta_i > 0$ where $\tilde{\Gamma}'_i, \tilde{D}'_i, \tilde{M}'_i$ are the pushdowns of Γ'_i, D'_i, M'_i . This means that t_i is the generalised lc threshold of \tilde{D}'_i with respect to $(\tilde{X}'_i, \tilde{\Gamma}'_i - t_i \tilde{D}'_i + \tilde{M}'_i)$. Again this contradicts [9, Th. 1.5].

(3) Assume this is not true. Then there exist a decreasing sequence ϵ_i of numbers approaching 0, and a sequence $(X'_i, B'_i + M'_i)$ of generalised pairs as in the statement such that if Θ'_i is the divisor derived from B'_i using ϵ_i , then the MMP ends with a Mori fibre space; that is, there is an extremal non-birational contraction $X''_i \rightarrow T''_i/Z$ that is $-(K_{X''_i} + \Theta''_i + M''_i)$ -negative. Under our assumptions, $-(K_{X''_i} + B''_i + M''_i)$ is nef over T''_i . So there exist boundaries

$B'_i \leq \Gamma'_i \leq \Theta'_i$ with $\Gamma'_i \in \Phi \cup (1 - \epsilon_i, 1]$ such that

$$-(K_{X''_i} + \Gamma''_i + M''_i) \equiv 0/T''_i.$$

Moreover, there is a component D'_i of Γ'_i with coefficient $t_i \in (1 - \epsilon_i, 1)$ such that D'_i is ample over T''_i . In particular, the set of the coefficients of the horizontal/ T''_i components of all the Γ''_i put together is not a finite set, but we can assume it to be DCC. Thus by restricting to the general fibres of $X''_i \rightarrow T''_i$ we get a contradiction in view of the global ACC for generalised pairs [9, Th. 1.6].

(4) This follows from (1) since the assumptions of the proposition are stable under the MMP. □

3. Adjunction

In this section we discuss various kinds of adjunction that are needed in the subsequent sections. In general adjunction is relating the (log) canonical divisors of two varieties that are somehow related. We will consider adjunction for a prime divisor on a variety (divisorial adjunction), and more generally for a non-klt centre on a variety (adjunction on non-klt centres), and for certain fibrations (adjunction for fibre spaces).

3.1. Divisorial adjunction. (1) Let $(X', B' + M')$ be a generalised pair with data $X \xrightarrow{\phi} X'$ and M . Assume that S' is the normalisation of a component of B' with coefficient 1, and that S is its birational transform on X . Replacing X we may assume ϕ is a log resolution of (X', B') . Write

$$K_X + B + M = \phi^*(K_{X'} + B' + M'),$$

let $B_S = (B - S)|_S$, and pick $M_S \sim_{\mathbb{R}} M|_S$. We get

$$K_S + B_S + M_S \sim_{\mathbb{R}} (K_X + B + M)|_S.$$

Let ψ be the induced morphism $S \rightarrow S'$, and let $B_{S'} = \psi_* B_S$ and $M_{S'} = \psi_* M_S$. Then we get

$$K_{S'} + B_{S'} + M_{S'} \sim_{\mathbb{R}} (K_{X'} + B' + M')|_{S'},$$

which we refer to as *generalised (divisorial) adjunction*. Note that

$$K_S + B_S + M_S = \psi^*(K_{S'} + B_{S'} + M_{S'}).$$

When $M = 0$, we recover the usual *divisorial adjunction*.

Assume $(X', B' + M')$ is generalised lc. Then the coefficients of $B_{S'}$ belong to $[0, 1]$ [9, Rem. 4.8]. We then consider $(S', B_{S'} + M_{S'})$ as a generalised pair that comes with data $S \xrightarrow{\psi} S'$ and M_S . It is clear from the construction that $(S', B_{S'} + M_{S'})$ is generalised lc.

(2) The above generalised adjunction formula is not unique; that is, although $B_{S'}$ is uniquely determined depending on both B' and M , M_S is not

unique: if S is a component of M , then in general $M|_S$ is only defined up to \mathbb{R} -linear equivalence. However, in some situations we can choose M_S so that it satisfies certain properties. For example, assume pM is b-Cartier for some $p \in \mathbb{N}$. Then we can choose M_S such that pM_S is b-Cartier. Indeed, we can assume that ϕ is a log resolution of (X', B') and that pM is Cartier, and then we can choose M_S such that $pM_S \sim (pM)|_S$. In particular, pM_S is Cartier. Moreover,

$$p(K_X + B + M) \sim L,$$

where L is an \mathbb{R} -divisor whose support does not contain S . This means that $p(K_X + B + M)|_S$ is well defined up to linear equivalence, which in turn implies that $p(K_{X'} + B' + M')|_{S'}$ is also well defined up to linear equivalence. Therefore, we get

$$p(K_{S'} + B_{S'} + M_{S'}) \sim p(K_{X'} + B' + M')|_{S'}.$$

(3) Next we prove inversion of adjunction similar to the one for usual pairs.

LEMMA 3.2 (Generalised inversion of adjunction). *Let $(X', B' + M')$ be a \mathbb{Q} -factorial generalised pair with data $X \xrightarrow{\phi} X'$ and M . Assume that S' is a component of B' with coefficient 1 and that (X', S') is plt. Let*

$$K_{S'} + B_{S'} + M_{S'} \sim_{\mathbb{R}} (K_{X'} + B' + M')|_{S'}$$

be given by generalised adjunction. If $(S', B_{S'} + M_{S'})$ is generalised lc, then $(X', B' + M')$ is generalised lc near S' .

Proof. Assume $(X', B' + M')$ is not generalised lc near S' . We can assume ϕ is a log resolution. Write

$$K_X + B + M = \phi^*(K_{X'} + B' + M').$$

By assumption, $\phi(B^{>1})$ intersects S' . Pick $\alpha \in (0, 1)$ sufficiently close to 1, let $\Gamma' = (1 - \alpha)S' + \alpha B'$, and write

$$K_X + \Gamma + \alpha M = \phi^*(K_{X'} + \Gamma' + \alpha M').$$

Then $(X', \Gamma' + \alpha M')$ is not generalised lc near S' . On the other hand, since (X', S') is plt and $(S', B_{S'} + M_{S'})$ is generalised lc, $(S', \Gamma_{S'} + \alpha M_{S'})$ is generalised klt where

$$K_{S'} + \Gamma_{S'} + \alpha M_{S'} \sim_{\mathbb{R}} (K_{X'} + \Gamma' + \alpha M')|_{S'}$$

is generalised adjunction. Thus replacing B' with Γ' and M with αM , we can assume $(S', B_{S'} + M_{S'})$ is generalised klt.

Pick an ample divisor $A \geq 0$ and an effective divisor $C \geq 0$ on X such that $A + C \sim 0/X'$ and that S is not a component of C . Let $\epsilon > 0$ be small, and pick a general $0 \leq G \sim_{\mathbb{R}} \epsilon A + M/X'$. Let $\Delta := B + G + \epsilon C$. Then $K_X + \Delta \sim_{\mathbb{R}} 0/X'$, and hence $K_X + \Delta = \phi^*(K_{X'} + \Delta')$, where Δ' is the pushdown

of Δ . In particular, (X', Δ') is not lc near S' as $\Delta \geq B$. On the other hand, by assumption, (S, B_S) is sub-klt where $K_S + B_S = (K_X + B)|_S$. This implies (S, Δ_S) is also sub-klt by construction of Δ where $K_S + \Delta_S = (K_X + \Delta)|_S$. Therefore, letting $K_{S'} + \Delta_{S'} = (K_{X'} + \Delta')|_{S'}$, we see that $(S', \Delta_{S'})$ is klt because $K_S + \Delta_S$ is the pullback of $K_{S'} + \Delta_{S'}$. This contradicts the usual inversion of adjunction [24]. \square

(4) The next result is similar to [40, Prop. 3.9] and [9, Prop. 4.9].

LEMMA 3.3. *Let $p \in \mathbb{N}$ and $\mathfrak{R} \subset [0, 1]$ be a finite set of rational numbers. Then there is a finite set of rational numbers $\mathfrak{S} \subset [0, 1]$ depending only on p and \mathfrak{R} satisfying the following. Assume*

- $(X', B' + M')$ is generalised lc of dimension d with data $X \xrightarrow{\phi} X'$ and M ,
- S' is the normalisation of a component of $\lfloor B' \rfloor$,
- $B' \in \Phi(\mathfrak{R})$ and pM is b-Cartier, and
- $(S', B_{S'} + M_{S'})$ is the generalised pair determined by generalised adjunction

$$K_{S'} + B_{S'} + M_{S'} \sim_{\mathbb{R}} (K_{X'} + B' + M')|_{S'}.$$

Then $B_{S'} \in \Phi(\mathfrak{S})$.

Proof. By taking hypersurface sections, we can reduce the lemma to the case when X' is a surface. In this case $K_{X'} + B'$ is automatically \mathbb{R} -Cartier and (X', B') is lc [9, Rem. 4.8]. Let V be a closed point on S' , and assume $\mu_V B_{S'} < 1$. In particular, if we use usual adjunction to write $K_{S'} + \tilde{B}_{S'} = (K_{X'} + B')|_{S'}$, then $\mu_V \tilde{B}_{S'} \leq \mu_V B_{S'} < 1$. Then by inversion of adjunction on surfaces [42, Cor. 3.12], (X', B') is plt near the image of V . Thus shrinking X' we can assume that $S' \rightarrow X'$ maps S' isomorphically onto its image, and that X' is \mathbb{Q} -factorial since $\dim X' = 2$.

Assume $B' = \sum_{i=1}^n b_i B'_i$, where B'_i are irreducible components. By [42, Prop. 3.9, Cor. 3.10], there is $l \in \mathbb{N}$ depending only on (X', S') such that the Cartier index near V of any Weil divisor on X' divides l and that

$$\mu_V \tilde{B}_{S'} = 1 - \frac{1}{l} + \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{b_i \alpha_i}{l},$$

where $\alpha_i \in \mathbb{Z}^{\geq 0}$.

Replacing ϕ we can assume X, S are smooth. Write $\phi^* M' = M + E$. Since M is nef/ X' , E is effective. Since pM is b-Cartier and X is smooth, pM is Cartier, so pM' is integral and lpM' is Cartier. Thus lpE is Cartier. Now by definition, $B_{S'} = \tilde{B}_{S'} + E_{S'}$, where $E_{S'}$ is the pushdown of $E|_S$. In particular, $lpE_{S'}$ is integral. Therefore,

$$\mu_V B_{S'} = 1 - \frac{1}{l} + \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{b_i \alpha_i}{l} + \frac{\beta}{pl}$$

for some $\beta \in \mathbb{Z}^{\geq 0}$.

Expanding \mathfrak{K} we can assume $\frac{p-1}{p} \in \mathfrak{K}$; hence $\frac{1}{p} \in \Phi(\mathfrak{K})$. Put $\alpha_{n+1} := \beta$ and $b_{n+1} := \frac{1}{p}$. So we can write

$$\mu_V B_{S'} = 1 - \frac{1}{l} + \sum_{i=1}^{n+1} \frac{b_i \alpha_i}{l}.$$

For each i , there are $r_i \in \mathfrak{K}$ and $m_i \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $b_i = 1 - \frac{r_i}{m_i}$. Let $s := 1 - \sum_{i=1}^{n+1} b_i \alpha_i$. Then $\mu_V B_{S'} = 1 - \frac{s}{l}$ and $s > 0$. Removing the zero terms and re-arranging the indexes we can assume $s = 1 - \sum_{i=1}^t b_i \alpha_i$, and that $b_i \alpha_i > 0$ for every i ; otherwise $\mu_V B_{S'} = 1 - \frac{1}{l}$ is just a standard coefficient. Note that since $s > 0$, we have $\sum_{i=1}^t b_i \alpha_i < 1$; hence α_i are bounded. Moreover, $b_i \geq 1 - \frac{1}{m_i}$, which means $b_i \geq \frac{1}{2}$ if $m_i > 1$.

Now assume $t = 1$. Then either $m_1 = 1$, or $m_1 > 1$ and $\alpha_1 = 1$. Hence in any case $s = \frac{s'}{m_1}$, where there are only finitely many possibilities for s' . Thus

$$\mu_V B_{S'} = 1 - \frac{s}{l} = 1 - \frac{s'}{m_1 l} \in \Phi(\mathfrak{S})$$

if we choose \mathfrak{S} so that it contains all such s' . We can then assume $t > 1$. If $m_i = 1$ for every i , then there are finitely many possibilities for

$$s = 1 - \sum_{i=1}^t (1 - r_i) \alpha_i,$$

and so we can choose \mathfrak{S} to contain all such s . But if some $m_i > 1$, say $m_1 > 1$, then $\alpha_1 = 1$ and $m_i = 1$ for $i > 1$. Then

$$s = \frac{r_1}{m_1} - \sum_{i=2}^t (1 - r_i) \alpha_i.$$

Hence m_1 is bounded, so $s = \frac{s'}{m_1}$ for some s' for which there are only finitely many possibilities. As before, taking \mathfrak{S} so that it contains all such s' , we get $\mu_V B_{S'} \in \Phi(\mathfrak{S})$. □

3.4. *Adjunction for fibre spaces.* (1) Let (X, B) be a projective sub-pair, and let $f: X \rightarrow Z$ be a contraction with $\dim Z > 0$ such that (X, B) is sub-lc near the generic fibre of f , and $K_X + B \sim_{\mathbb{R}} 0/Z$. Below we recall a construction based on [28] giving a kind of canonical bundle formula, which we refer to as *adjunction for fibre spaces* [3], [40, §7].

For each prime divisor D on Z , we let t_D be the lc threshold of f^*D with respect to (X, B) over the generic point of D ; that is, t_D is the largest number so that $(X, B + t_D f^*D)$ is sub-lc over the generic point of D . Of course f^*D may not be well defined everywhere, but at least it is defined over the smooth locus of Z , in particular, near the generic point of D , and that is all we need. Next let $b_D = 1 - t_D$, and then define $B_Z = \sum b_D D$ where the sum runs over all the prime divisors on Z .

By assumption, $K_X + B \sim_{\mathbb{R}} f^*L_Z$ for some \mathbb{R} -Cartier \mathbb{R} -divisor L_Z on Z . Letting $M_Z = L_Z - (K_Z + B_Z)$ we get

$$K_X + B \sim_{\mathbb{R}} f^*(K_Z + B_Z + M_Z).$$

We call B_Z the *discriminant part* and M_Z the *moduli part* of adjunction. Obviously B_Z is uniquely determined, but M_Z is determined only up to \mathbb{R} -linear equivalence because it depends on the choice of L_Z .

Now let $\phi: X' \rightarrow X$ and $\psi: Z' \rightarrow Z$ be birational morphisms from normal projective varieties, and assume the induced map $f': X' \dashrightarrow Z'$ is a morphism. Let $K_{X'} + B' = \phi^*(K_X + B)$. Similar to above we can define a discriminant divisor $B_{Z'}$, and taking $L_{Z'} = \psi^*L_Z$ gives a moduli divisor $M_{Z'}$ so that

$$K_{X'} + B' \sim_{\mathbb{R}} f'^*(K_{Z'} + B_{Z'} + M_{Z'}),$$

and $B_Z = \psi_*B_{Z'}$ and $M_Z = \psi_*M_{Z'}$.

(2) We want to show M_Z depends only on (X, B) near the generic fibre of f , even birationally. We make this more precise. In addition to the assumptions of (1), suppose we are given another projective sub-pair (\bar{X}, \bar{B}) and a contraction $\bar{X} \rightarrow Z$ such that $K_{\bar{X}} + \bar{B} \sim_{\mathbb{R}} 0/Z$. Moreover, suppose we have a birational map $X \dashrightarrow \bar{X}/Z$, and suppose there is a common resolution of X and \bar{X} on which the pullback of $K_X + B$ and $K_{\bar{X}} + \bar{B}$ are equal near the generic fibre over Z . As in (1) we can define the discriminant and moduli parts $\bar{B}_{Z'}$ and $\bar{M}_{Z'}$ of adjunction on the birational model Z' of Z for the pair (\bar{X}, \bar{B}) and the contraction $\bar{X} \rightarrow Z$.

LEMMA 3.5. *Under the above notation and assumptions, $M_{Z'} \sim_{\mathbb{R}} \bar{M}_{Z'}$.*

Proof. Replacing both X and \bar{X} with a common resolution over Z' , replacing $K_X + B$ and $K_{\bar{X}} + \bar{B}$ with their crepant pullbacks, and replacing Z with Z' we can assume $\bar{X} = X$, $Z' = Z$, and that $\bar{B} = B$ near the generic fibre. Then $\bar{B} - B$ is vertical over Z and $\bar{B} - B \sim_{\mathbb{R}} 0/Z$. So $\bar{B} - B = f^*P$ for some P on Z . Therefore, by definition of the discriminant part, $\bar{B}_Z = B_Z + P$ from which we get $\bar{M}_Z \sim_{\mathbb{R}} M_Z$ because

$$K_Z + B_Z + M_Z + P \sim_{\mathbb{R}} K_Z + \bar{B}_Z + \bar{M}_Z. \quad \square$$

(3) When (X, B) is lc over the generic point of Z the moduli part has nice properties.

THEOREM 3.6. *Under the notation and assumptions of (1), suppose that (X, B) is lc near the generic fibre of f . Let Z' be a sufficiently high resolution of Z . Then*

- (i) $M_{Z'}$ is pseudo-effective; and
- (ii) if B is a \mathbb{Q} -divisor, then $M_{Z'}$ is nef and for any birational morphism $Z'' \rightarrow Z'$ from a normal projective variety, $M_{Z''}$ is the pullback of $M_{Z'}$.

Proof. Let Γ be the divisor obtained from B by removing components that are vertical/ Z . Since (X, B) is lc over the generic point of Z , we have $\Gamma \geq 0$ as any component of B with negative coefficient is vertical/ Z , and over the generic point of Z , we have $\Gamma = B$. Let $\phi: W \rightarrow X$ be a log resolution of (X, B) , and let Γ_W be the sum of the horizontal/ Z part of the reduced exceptional divisor of ϕ and the birational transform of Γ . We can choose W so that every lc centre of (W, Γ_W) is horizontal/ Z . Running an MMP on $K_W + \Gamma_W$ over X we reach a model X' so that (X', Γ') is a \mathbb{Q} -factorial dlt model of (X, B) over the generic point of Z . Let $K_{X'} + B'$ be the pullback of $K_X + B$. Replacing (X, B) with (X', B') and replacing (X, Γ) with (X', Γ') we can assume (X, Γ) is \mathbb{Q} -factorial dlt with every lc centre horizontal/ Z , and that every component of Γ is horizontal/ Z .

We prove (ii) first. By [5, Th. 1.4] we can replace X with a model on which $K_X + \Gamma$ is semi-ample over Z , hence defining a contraction $X \rightarrow Y/Z$. Since $K_X + \Gamma \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0/Y$, by Lemma 3.5, we can replace Z with Y and replace B with Γ , and hence assume (X, B) is \mathbb{Q} -factorial dlt. The claim then follows from [13]. (This relies on [4] in the klt case.)

Now we prove (i). By standard arguments we can find \mathbb{Q} -divisors B^i and numbers $\alpha_i \in [0, 1]$ with $\sum \alpha_i = 1$ such that $B = \sum \alpha_i B^i$, (X, B^i) is lc over the generic point of Z , and $K_X + B^i \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0/Z$. Let B_Z^i (resp. $B_{Z'}^i$) and M_Z^i (resp. $M_{Z'}^i$) be the discriminant and moduli parts on Z (resp. Z') defined for (X, B^i) over Z . Let D be a prime divisor on Z , and let t_i be the lc threshold of f^*D with respect to (X, B^i) over the generic point of D . Then $(X, B + (\sum \alpha_i t_i) f^*D)$ is lc over the generic point of D , hence $t \geq \sum \alpha_i t_i$, where t is the lc threshold of f^*D with respect to (X, B) over the generic point of D . Then

$$1 - t \leq 1 - \sum \alpha_i t_i = \sum \alpha_i - \sum \alpha_i t_i = \sum \alpha_i (1 - t_i)$$

from which we deduce $B_Z \leq \sum \alpha_i B_Z^i$. Similarly we can prove $B_{Z'} \leq \sum \alpha_i B_{Z'}^i$. Then from

$$K_{Z'} + B_{Z'} + M_{Z'} \sim_{\mathbb{R}} \sum \alpha_i (K_{Z'} + B_{Z'}^i + M_{Z'}^i)$$

we deduce that $M_{Z'} \sim_{\mathbb{R}} \sum \alpha_i M_{Z'}^i + P$ for some $P \geq 0$. Therefore, $M_{Z'}$ is pseudo-effective as each $M_{Z'}^i$ is nef. \square

(4) Next we relate the singularities of (X, B) and $(Z, B_Z + M_Z)$ in a rough sense.

LEMMA 3.7. *Let $\epsilon \in \mathbb{R}$. Under the notation and assumptions of (1), suppose there is a prime divisor S on some birational model of X such that the log discrepancy $a(S, X, B) \leq \epsilon$ and that S is vertical over Z . Then there is a resolution $Z' \rightarrow Z$ and a component T of $B_{Z'}$ with coefficient $\geq 1 - \epsilon$.*

Proof. Pick resolutions $X' \rightarrow X$ and $Z' \rightarrow Z$ so that the induced map $f': X' \dashrightarrow Z'$ is a morphism and so that S is a prime divisor on X' and its image on Z' is a prime divisor T . Let $K_{X'} + B'$ be the pullback of $K_X + B$. Since $a(S, X, B) \leq \epsilon$, the coefficient of S in B' is at least $1 - \epsilon$. Thus the lc threshold of f'^*T with respect to (X', B') over the generic point of T is at most ϵ . Therefore, the coefficient of T in $B_{Z'}$ is at least $1 - \epsilon$. \square

3.8. *Adjunction on non-klt centres.* In this subsection we recall a kind of adjunction introduced in [18, Th. 4.2] similar to the so-called sub-adjunction formula [28], and we then prove some new results in this direction.

Construction 3.9. Assume the following setting:

- (X, B) is a projective klt pair;
- $G \subset X$ is a subvariety with normalisation F ;
- X is \mathbb{Q} -factorial near the generic point of G ;
- $\Delta \geq 0$ is an \mathbb{R} -Cartier divisor on X ; and
- $(X, B + \Delta)$ is lc near the generic point of G , and there is a unique non-klt place of this pair whose centre is G .

We will define an \mathbb{R} -divisor Θ_F on F with coefficients in $[0, 1]$. This then gives an adjunction formula

$$K_F + \Theta_F + P_F \sim_{\mathbb{R}} (K_X + B + \Delta)|_F,$$

where in general P_F is determined only up to \mathbb{R} -linear equivalence.

Let Γ be the sum of $(B + \Delta)^{<1}$ and the support of $(B + \Delta)^{\geq 1}$. Put $N = B + \Delta - \Gamma$, which is supported in $[\Gamma]$. Let $\phi: W \rightarrow X$ be a log resolution of $(X, B + \Delta)$, and let Γ_W be the sum of the reduced exceptional divisor of ϕ and the birational transform of Γ . Let

$$N_W = \phi^*(K_X + B + \Delta) - (K_W + \Gamma_W).$$

Then $\phi_*N_W = N \geq 0$ and N_W is supported in $[\Gamma_W]$. Now run an MMP/ X on $K_W + \Gamma_W$ with scaling of some ample divisor H . We reach a model Y on which $K_Y + \Gamma_Y$ is a limit of movable/ X \mathbb{R} -divisors (2.9). Applying the general negativity lemma (cf. [5, Lemma 3.3]), we deduce $N_Y \geq 0$. In particular, if $U \subseteq X$ is the set of points where $(X, B + \Delta)$ is lc, then $N_Y = 0$ over U and (Y, Γ_Y) is a \mathbb{Q} -factorial dlt model of $(X, B + \Delta)$ over U . By assumption, $(X, B + \Delta)$ is lc but not klt at the generic point of G . By Lemma 2.33, no non-klt centre of the pair contains G apart from G itself; hence we can assume there is a unique component S of $[\Gamma_Y]$ mapping onto G . Moreover, G is not inside the image of N_Y .

Let $h: S \rightarrow F$ be the morphism induced by $S \rightarrow G$. By Lemma 2.33, h is a contraction. By divisorial adjunction we can write

$$K_S + \Gamma_S + N_S = (K_Y + \Gamma_Y + N_Y)|_S \sim_{\mathbb{R}} 0/F,$$

where $N_S = N_Y|_S$ is vertical over F . If S is exceptional over X , then let Σ_Y be the sum of the exceptional/ X divisors on Y plus the birational transform of B . Otherwise let Σ_Y be the sum of the exceptional/ X divisors on Y plus the birational transform of B plus $(1 - \mu_G B)S$. In any case, S is a component of $[\Sigma_Y]$ and $\Sigma_Y \leq \Gamma_Y$. Applying adjunction again we get $K_S + \Sigma_S = (K_Y + \Sigma_Y)|_S$. Obviously $\Sigma_S \leq \Gamma_S$.

Now we define Θ_F : for each prime divisor D on F , let t be the lc threshold of h^*D with respect to (S, Σ_S) over the generic point of D , and then let $\mu_D \Theta_F := 1 - t$. Note that h^*D is defined only over the generic point of D as D may not be \mathbb{Q} -Cartier. The same applies to similar definitions below; e.g., see the proof of [Lemma 3.11](#).

THEOREM 3.10 ([\[18, Th. 4.2\]](#)). *Let $d \in \mathbb{N}$, and let Φ be a subset of $[0, 1]$ that contains 1. Let $X, B, \Delta, G, F, \Theta_F, P_F$ be as in [Construction 3.9](#), and assume $\dim X = d$ and $B \in \Phi$. Then the coefficients of Θ_F belong to*

$$\Psi := \{a \mid 1 - a \in \text{LCT}_{d-1}(D(\Phi))\} \cup \{1\}$$

and P_F is pseudo-effective.

Now suppose in addition that G is a general member of a covering family of subvarieties of X . Let $\psi: F' \rightarrow F$ be a log resolution of (F, Θ_F) , and let $\Theta_{F'}$ be the sum of the birational transform of Θ_F and the reduced exceptional divisor of ψ . Then

$$K_{F'} + \Theta_{F'} \geq (K_X + B)|_{F'}.$$

For convenience we explain some of the notation in the theorem and also prove the claim of pseudo-effectivity of P_F in the next paragraph. The set $D(\Phi)$ is a set associated to Φ with the properties that $D(\Phi)$ is DCC if and only if Φ is DCC and the coefficients of Σ_S in [Construction 3.9](#) belong to $D(\Phi)$; see [\[18, 3.4\]](#) and [\[40, Prop. 3.9\]](#). The set $\text{LCT}_{d-1}(D(\Phi))$ stands for the set of all lc thresholds of integral effective divisors with respect to pairs (S, Γ) of dimension $d - 1$ such that $\Gamma \in D(\Phi)$. In particular, if Φ is DCC, then Ψ is also DCC [\[18, Th. 1.1\]](#).

Now recall that P_F is defined by the relation

$$K_F + \Theta_F + P_F \sim_{\mathbb{R}} (K_X + B + \Delta)|_F.$$

Using the notation of [Construction 3.9](#), we have

$$K_S + \Gamma_S + N_S \sim_{\mathbb{R}} h^*(K_F + \Theta_F + P_F).$$

Let Δ_F and R_F be the discriminant and the moduli parts of adjunction for $(S, \Gamma_S + N_S)$ over F . Then $\Delta_F + R_F \sim_{\mathbb{R}} \Theta_F + P_F$. Since $\Sigma_S \leq \Gamma_S + N_S$, we have $\Theta_F \leq \Delta_F$, and hence $P_F - R_F \sim_{\mathbb{R}} \Delta_F - \Theta_F \geq 0$. By [Theorem 3.6](#), R_F is pseudo-effective, which implies P_F is pseudo-effective too.

In the rest of this subsection we prove further results regarding the above adjunction. The proof of [Lemma 3.12](#) contains a proof of the last claim of [Theorem 3.10](#) (when G is a member of a covering family) based on the proof of [[18](#), Th. 4.2] but with more details.

LEMMA 3.11. *Let $(X, B), \Delta, G, F$, and Θ_F , be as in [Construction 3.9](#). Let $M \geq 0$ be a \mathbb{Q} -Cartier \mathbb{Q} -divisor on X with coefficients ≥ 1 and such that $G \not\subseteq \text{Supp } M$. Then for every component D of $M_F := M|_F$, we have $\mu_D(\Theta_F + M_F) \geq 1$.*

Proof. We will use the notation introduced in [Construction 3.9](#). Let $\Sigma'_Y := \Sigma_Y + M_Y$ and $\Sigma'_S = \Sigma_S + M_S$, where $M_Y = M|_Y$ and $M_S = M_Y|_S$. We define Θ'_F similar to Θ_F . That is, for each prime divisor D on F , let t' be the lc threshold of h^*D with respect to (S, Σ'_S) over the generic point of D , and then let $\mu_D \Theta'_F := 1 - t'$. It is easy to see $t' + \mu_D M_F = t$. This means $\Theta'_F = \Theta_F + M_F$. On the other hand, each component L of M_Y is either exceptional or non-exceptional over X ; in the former case L is a component of $[\Sigma_Y]$ as $[\Sigma_Y]$ contains all the exceptional divisors, and in the latter case L is a component of $[M_Y]$ as the coefficients of M are at least 1. Combining this with the fact that S is not a component of M_Y , we get

$$\text{Supp } M_Y \subseteq \text{Supp } [\Sigma_Y + M_Y - S] = \text{Supp } [\Sigma'_Y - S].$$

Therefore,

$$\text{Supp } M_S \subseteq (\text{Supp } [\Sigma'_Y - S])|_S \subseteq \text{Supp } [\Sigma'_S],$$

where the second inclusion follows from the following property of adjunction: if T is a reduced divisor on Y not containing S and if $K_S + T_S = (K_S + S + T)|_S$ is given by adjunction, then $\text{Supp } T|_S \subseteq \text{Supp } [T_S]$.

Now as $h^*M_F = M_S$, if D is a component of M_F , then every component of h^*D mapping onto D is a component of $[\Sigma'_S]$. Thus $t' \leq 0$, where as above t' is the lc threshold of h^*D with respect to (S, Σ'_S) over the generic point of D . Therefore,

$$\mu_D(\Theta_F + M_F) = \mu_D \Theta'_F = 1 - t' \geq 1. \quad \square$$

LEMMA 3.12. *Let $(X, B), \Delta, G, F$, and Θ_F be as in [Construction 3.9](#). Assume that G is a general member of a covering family of subvarieties, and assume (X, B) is ϵ -lc for some $\epsilon > 0$. Then there is a sub-boundary B_F on F such that $K_F + B_F = (K_X + B)|_F$, that (F, B_F) is sub- ϵ -lc, and $B_F \leq \Theta_F$.*

Proof. We first give a short summary of the proof. We consider the covering family to which G belongs, and we then derive another family $W' \rightarrow R'$ such that the induced morphism $W' \rightarrow X$ is generically finite. Next we let $K_{W'} + B_{W'}$ be the pullback of $K_X + B$, and restricting to the fibre $F' \rightarrow R'$ corresponding to G , we get $K_{F'} + B_{F'} = (K_{W'} + B_{W'})|_{F'}$. Pushing

down $B_{F'}$ to F gives B_F . Afterwards we show (F, B_F) is sub- ϵ -lc. The rest of the proof is devoted to showing $B_F \leq \Theta_F$ by relating the coefficients of Θ_F to lc thresholds of certain divisors on X .

Step 1. In this step we consider the covering family to which G belongs. There is a contraction $\tilde{f}: \tilde{V} \rightarrow \tilde{T}$ of projective varieties such that G is a general fibre of \tilde{f} , and there is a surjective morphism $\tilde{V} \rightarrow X$ whose restriction to each fibre of \tilde{f} over a closed point is a closed immersion (see [Section 2.27](#)). Taking normalisations of \tilde{V} and \tilde{T} , we get a contraction $f: V \rightarrow T$ of normal projective varieties such that the fibre of f corresponding to G is just F the normalisation of G . Taking resolutions of V and T , we get a contraction $f': V' \rightarrow T'$ of smooth projective varieties. Letting F' be the fibre of f' corresponding to F , we see that the induced morphism $F' \rightarrow X$ is birational onto its image. Moreover, we can assume there is a Cartier divisor $P \geq 0$ on X whose support contains $\text{Supp } B$ and the singular locus of X and such that $Q' := \text{Supp } g'^*P$ is relatively simple normal crossing over some open subset of T' where g' is the induced map $V' \rightarrow X$.

Step 2. In this step we consider another covering family that is generically finite over X . Fixing G , by construction, f' is smooth over $t' = f'(F')$, g' is smooth over $g'(\eta_{F'})$, and $g'(\eta_{F'})$ is smooth on X . If g' is generically finite, then let $W' := V'$ and $R' := T'$. If not, applying [Lemma 2.28](#), there is a general smooth hypersurface section H' of T' passing through t' so that if $U' = f'^*H'$, then U' and H' are smooth, $U' \rightarrow H'$ is smooth over t' , and $U' \rightarrow X$ is surjective and smooth over $g'(\eta_{F'})$. Repeating this we get a smooth subvariety R' of T' passing through t' so that the induced family $W' \rightarrow R'$ is smooth over t' , W' is smooth, $W' \rightarrow X$ is surjective and generically finite and étale over $g'(\eta_{F'})$. Let $Q_{W'} = Q'|_{W'}$. Then by construction, $Q_{W'}|_{F'} = Q'|_{F'}$ is reduced and simple normal crossing. Therefore, near F' the divisor $Q_{W'}$ is reduced and any prime divisor C' on F' is contained in at most one component of $Q_{W'}$.

Step 3. In this step we define a sub-boundary $B_{F'}$ whose pushdown to F gives B_F . Let $K_{W'} + B_{W'}$ be the pullback of $K_X + B$ to W' . Here $K_{W'}$ and $B_{W'}$ are uniquely determined as Weil divisors. (We assume we have already fixed a choice of K_X .) Let $W' \rightarrow W \rightarrow X$ be the Stein factorisation of $W' \rightarrow X$. By the Riemann-Hurwitz formula, each coefficient of B_W is $\leq 1 - \epsilon$, where $K_W + B_W$ is the pullback of $K_X + B$. Thus (W, B_W) is sub- ϵ -lc by [\[36, Prop. 5.20\]](#); hence $(W', B_{W'})$ is also sub- ϵ -lc. On the other hand, by our choice of P , any component of $B_{W'}$ with positive coefficient is mapped into P , and hence it is a component of $Q_{W'}$. Moreover, since G was chosen general, it is not inside $\text{Supp } K_X \cup \text{Supp } P$. Thus since $W' \rightarrow X$ is étale over $g'(\eta_{F'})$, F' is not inside $\text{Supp } B_{W'}$ nor inside $\text{Supp } K_{W'}$. Defining $B_{F'} = B_{W'}|_{F'}$ we get $K_{F'} + B_{F'} = (K_{W'} + B_{W'})|_{F'}$, where $K_{F'} = K_{W'}|_{F'}$ follows from the fact that $W' \rightarrow R'$ is

smooth near F' . (Note that $K_{F'}$ is determined as a Weil divisor.) Let $K_F + B_F$ be the pushdown of $K_{F'} + B_{F'}$ which satisfies $K_F + B_F = (K_X + B)|_F$.

Step 4. In this step we show (F, B_F) is sub- ϵ -lc. It is enough to show $(F', B_{F'})$ is sub- ϵ -lc. This in turn follows if we show that $(F', A_{F'})$ is ϵ -lc where $A_{W'} := B_{W'}^{>0}$ and $A_{F'} = A_{W'}|_{F'}$. By the previous step, $\text{Supp } A_{W'} \subseteq \text{Supp } Q_{W'}$; hence

$$\text{Supp } A_{F'} = \text{Supp}(A_{W'}|_{F'}) \subseteq \text{Supp}(Q_{W'}|_{F'}) = \text{Supp}(Q'|_{F'}).$$

So $\text{Supp } A_{F'}$ is a simple normal crossing as $\text{Supp}(Q'|_{F'})$ is simple normal crossing. Therefore, it is enough to show each coefficient of $A_{F'}$ is $\leq 1 - \epsilon$.

Let C' be a component of $A_{F'}$ with positive coefficient. Then there is a component D' of $A_{W'}$ with positive coefficient so that C' is a component of $D'|_{F'}$. Since D' is a component of $Q_{W'}$, by the last sentence of Step 2, D' is uniquely determined and $D'|_{F'}$ is reduced. Then $\mu_{D'}B_{W'} = \mu_{D'}A_{W'} = \mu_{C'}A_{F'}$. But $\mu_{D'}B_{W'} \leq 1 - \epsilon$ because $(W', B_{W'})$ is sub- ϵ -lc, hence $\mu_{C'}A_{F'} \leq 1 - \epsilon$.

Step 5. In this step we compute the coefficients of Θ_F in terms of lc thresholds of certain divisors. Assume C is a prime divisor on F with $\mu_C B_F > 0$. Let C' on F' be the birational transform of C . Then $\mu_{C'} B_{F'} > 0$. Thus there is a unique component D' of $B_{W'}^{>0}$ with positive coefficient such that C' is a component of $D'|_{F'}$. In particular, $\mu_{C'} B_{F'} \leq \mu_{C'} A_{F'} = \mu_{D'} B_{W'}$ as in the previous step. (Note that we do not claim $\mu_{C'} B_{F'} = \mu_{D'} B_{W'}$ because we have not ruled out the possibility that another component of $B_{W'}$ with negative coefficient contains C' .) Let $L = cP$, and let $L_{W'} = L|_{W'}$ and $L_{F'} = L|_{F'}$ where c is the number so that $\mu_{D'} L_{W'} = 1$. Then $\mu_{C'} L_{F'} = \mu_{D'} L_{W'} = 1$.

We use the notation introduced in [Construction 3.9](#). Recall that we constructed a birational morphism $Y \rightarrow X$, which we denote by π , a boundary Σ_Y , a component S of $[\Sigma_Y]$ mapping onto G , and Σ_S defined by $K_S + \Sigma_S = (K_Y + \Sigma_Y)|_S$. Let $L_S = L|_S$, and let t be the lc threshold of L_S with respect to (S, Σ_S) over the generic point η_C of C . By construction, $\mu_C(L|_F) = \mu_{C'} L_{F'} = 1$, so under $h: S \rightarrow F$ the divisor L_S is equal to h^*C over η_C . Therefore, $\mu_C \Theta_F = 1 - t$.

Step 6. In this step we consider the lc threshold of L on X . Let s be the lc threshold of L with respect to (X, B) near $\nu(\eta_C)$, where ν denotes $F \rightarrow G$. Let I be the minimal non-klt centre of $(X, B + sL)$ that contains $\nu(\eta_C)$. Since $G \not\subseteq \text{Supp } L$, we have $G \not\subseteq I$. Let $L_Y = \pi^*L$, and write $K_Y + B_Y = \pi^*(K_X + B)$. Let I_Y be a non-klt centre of $(Y, B_Y + sL_Y)$ that maps onto I . Since $\Sigma_Y \geq B_Y$, I_Y is also a non-klt centre of $(Y, \Sigma_Y + sL_Y)$. Note that $I_Y \neq S$.

Step 7. In this step and the next step we assume X is \mathbb{Q} -factorial. In this step we show $t \leq s$. This follows if we show that some non-klt centre of $(S, \Sigma_S + sL_S)$ maps onto C . Let Π be the fibre of π over a general closed point

of $\nu(C)$, and let H be the corresponding fibre of $S \rightarrow G$. Then Π is connected, and since X is \mathbb{Q} -factorial, Π is inside the union of the exceptional divisors of π , hence $\Pi \subset \lfloor \Sigma_Y \rfloor$. Moreover, I_Y intersects Π .

Let E be the connected component of H that maps into C under $S \rightarrow F$. If a component R of $\lfloor \Sigma_Y \rfloor - S$ intersects E , then $R \cap S$ gives a non-klt centre of $(S, \Sigma_S + sL_S)$ mapping onto C . (Note that $(\lfloor \Sigma_Y \rfloor - S) \cap S$ is vertical over F .) We can then assume $\lfloor \Sigma_Y \rfloor - S$ does not intersect E . Then $E = H = \Pi$. Indeed, otherwise, since Π is connected, there is a curve $Z \subseteq \Pi$ such that $Z \not\subseteq E$ but Z intersects E ; this is not possible because Z cannot be inside $\lfloor \Sigma_Y \rfloor - S$ as E does not intersect $\lfloor \Sigma_Y \rfloor - S$, so Z is inside S , and hence it is inside E as it intersects E , a contradiction.

Now I_Y intersects $E = \Pi$ by the first paragraph of this step, so by inversion of adjunction, $I_Y \cap S$ produces a non-klt centre of $(S, \Sigma_S + sL_S)$ intersecting E , and so the centre maps onto C as required. Thus we have proved $t \leq s$.

Step 8. In this step we show $B_F \leq \Theta_F$. Since $(X, B + sL)$ is lc near $\nu(\eta_C)$, the sub-pair $(W', B_{W'} + sL_{W'})$ is sub-lc over $\nu(\eta_C)$, which implies

$$\mu_{D'} B_{W'} + s = \mu_{D'}(B_{W'} + sL_{W'}) \leq 1,$$

where D' is as in Step 5. Therefore,

$$\mu_C B_F + t \leq \mu_{C'} B_{F'} + s \leq \mu_{D'} B_{W'} + s \leq 1,$$

where we use the inequality $\mu_{C'} B_{F'} \leq \mu_{D'} B_{W'}$ observed in Step 5. Therefore, we get $\mu_C B_F \leq 1 - t = \mu_C \Theta_F$.

Step 9. In this final step we take care of the non- \mathbb{Q} -factorial case. Assume X is not \mathbb{Q} -factorial, and let $\bar{X} \rightarrow X$ be a small \mathbb{Q} -factorialisation. Let $\bar{B}, \bar{\Delta}, \bar{G}$, etc., be the birational transforms of B, Δ, G , etc. We can assume $Y \rightarrow X$ and $W' \rightarrow X$ both factor through $\bar{X} \rightarrow X$. Let \bar{F} be the normalisation of \bar{G} . Then we have induced morphisms $S \rightarrow \bar{F} \rightarrow F$ where $\bar{F} \rightarrow F$ is birational. We can define $\Theta_{\bar{F}}$ whose pushdown to F is just Θ_F . Also we can write $K_{\bar{F}} + B_{\bar{F}} = (K_X + B)|_{\bar{F}}$ where the pushdown of $B_{\bar{F}}$ is just B_F . Thus it is enough to show $B_{\bar{F}} \leq \Theta_{\bar{F}}$. Now apply the arguments of Steps 7 and 8 on \bar{X} . \square

3.13. Lifting sections from non-klt centres. In this subsection we show that under suitable assumptions we can lift sections from a non-klt centre. This is a key ingredient of the proof of [Proposition 4.11](#) in the next section. First we prove a lemma.

LEMMA 3.14. *Let $(X, B), \Delta, G, F, \Theta_F, P_F, S, \Gamma_S, N_S$ be as in [Construction 3.9](#). Assume P_F is big. Then*

- (1) *if there is a prime divisor D on birational models of S such that $a(D, S, \Gamma_S + N_S) < \epsilon$ and that the centre of D on S is vertical over F where $\epsilon \geq 0$, then we can choose $P_F \geq 0$ so that $(F, \Theta_F + P_F)$ is not ϵ -lc;*

(2) if $(X, B + \Delta)$ has a non-klt centre intersecting G but not equal to G , then for each $\delta > 0$, we can choose $P_F \geq 0$ so that $(F, \Theta_F + P_F)$ is not δ -lc.

Proof. We use other notation introduced in [Construction 3.9](#). Let $\Delta_Y := \Gamma_Y + N_Y$, and let $\Delta_S := \Gamma_S + N_S$.

(1) Applying [Lemma 3.7](#), there is a high resolution $F' \rightarrow F$ so that some component T of $\Delta_{F'}$ has coefficient larger than $1 - \epsilon$ where $\Delta_{F'}, R_{F'}$ are the discriminant and moduli divisors on F' associated to (S, Δ_S) over F . (We will use $R_{F'}$ below.)

Pick a sufficiently small number $t > 0$. Since P_F is big, we can assume $P_F = A_F + C_F$ where $A_F \geq 0$ is ample and $C_F \geq 0$. Let $\Omega_F = \Theta_F + C_F$ and let $K_{F'} + \Omega_{F'}$ be the pullback of $K_F + \Omega_F$. Then the coefficient of T in $t\Omega_{F'} + (1-t)\Delta_{F'}$ is more than $1 - \epsilon$. As the moduli part $R_{F'}$ is pseudo-effective ([Theorem 3.6](#)), we can find

$$0 \leq J_{F'} \sim_{\mathbb{R}} tA_{F'} + (1-t)R_{F'},$$

where $A_{F'}$ is the pullback of A_F . Therefore,

$$(F', t\Omega_{F'} + (1-t)\Delta_{F'} + J_{F'})$$

is not sub- ϵ -lc. Moreover, as $K_{F'} + \Delta_{F'} + R_{F'}$ is the pullback of $K_F + \Delta_F + R_F$ and as $K_{F'} + \Omega_{F'} + A_{F'}$ is the pullback of $K_F + \Omega_F + A_F$, we see that

$$K_{F'} + t\Omega_{F'} + (1-t)\Delta_{F'} + J_{F'} \sim_{\mathbb{R}} t(K_{F'} + \Omega_{F'} + A_{F'}) + (1-t)(K_{F'} + \Delta_{F'} + R_{F'})$$

is \mathbb{R} -linearly trivial over F , and hence it is the pullback of

$$K_F + t\Omega_F + (1-t)\Delta_F + J_F,$$

where J_F is the pushdown of $J_{F'}$. Therefore,

$$(F, t\Omega_F + (1-t)\Delta_F + J_F)$$

is not ϵ -lc.

On the other hand, we have

$$\begin{aligned} t\Omega_F + (1-t)\Delta_F + J_F &\sim_{\mathbb{R}} t\Theta_F + tC_F + (1-t)\Delta_F + tA_F + (1-t)R_F \\ &= t\Theta_F + tP_F + (1-t)\Delta_F + (1-t)R_F \sim_{\mathbb{R}} \Theta_F + P_F. \end{aligned}$$

Moreover, by construction, $\Delta_F \geq \Theta_F$ because $\Delta_Y \geq \Gamma_Y \geq \Sigma_Y$, which gives $\Delta_S \geq \Sigma_S$. (Here Σ_Y and Σ_S are as in [3.9](#), which are used to define Θ_F .) Hence

$$t\Omega_F + (1-t)\Delta_F \geq t\Theta_F + (1-t)\Delta_F \geq \Theta_F.$$

Thus if we change P_F to

$$t\Omega_F + (1-t)\Delta_F + J_F - \Theta_F,$$

then P_F is effective and $(F, \Theta_F + P_F)$ is not ϵ -lc.

(2) By assumption, some non-klt centre $H \neq G$ of $(X, B + \Delta)$ intersects G , hence there is a non-klt centre $Z \neq S$ of (Y, Δ_Y) intersecting S and mapping onto H , by the connectedness principle applied to (Y, Δ_Y) near fibres of π over points in $H \cap G$. Thus some component of $[\Delta_Y - S]$ intersects S as the non-klt locus of (Y, Δ_Y) is equal to $[\Delta_Y] = [\Gamma_Y]$ because (Y, Γ_Y) is dlt and $\text{Supp } N_Y \subseteq [\Gamma_Y]$. This in turn gives a component of $[\Delta_S]$ that is vertical over F as there is a unique non-klt place of (Y, Δ_Y) with centre G . Applying (1) we can choose $P_F \geq 0$ in its \mathbb{R} -linear equivalence class such that the pair $(F, \Theta_F + P_F)$ is not δ -lc. \square

PROPOSITION 3.15. *Let $d, r \in \mathbb{N}$ and $\epsilon \in \mathbb{R}^{>0}$. Then there is $l \in \mathbb{N}$ depending only on d, r, ϵ satisfying the following. Let $(X, B), \Delta, G, F, \Theta_F$, and P_F be as in [Construction 3.9](#), and assume G is a general member of a covering family of subvarieties. Assume, in addition, that*

- X is Fano of dimension d and $B = 0$;
- $\Delta \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} -(n + 1)K_X$ for some $n \in \mathbb{N}$;
- $h^0(-nrK_X|_F) \neq 0$; and
- P_F is big and for any choice of $P_F \geq 0$ in its \mathbb{R} -linear equivalence class the pair $(F, \Theta_F + P_F)$ is ϵ -lc.

Then $h^0(-lnrK_X) \neq 0$.

Proof. We give a short description of the proof. The idea is to show that G is an isolated non-klt centre. Moreover, if $\pi: Y \rightarrow X$ and S, Γ_Y, N_Y are as in [Construction 3.9](#), then $(Y, \Gamma_Y + N_Y)$ is plt near S . Next we pull back a section in $H^0(-nrK_X|_F)$ to S and in turn lift the section to $H^0([\text{-}lnr\pi^*K_X])$ on Y using vanishing theorems, where l is a bounded natural number. Finally we push the section down to X to deduce $h^0(-lnrK_X) \neq 0$.

Step 1. In this step we show G is an isolated non-klt centre. We use the notation of [Construction 3.9](#). Remember that (X, Δ) is lc near the generic point of G . Also recall that $[\Gamma_Y]$ has a unique component S mapping onto G . Letting $\Delta_Y = \Gamma_Y + N_Y$ we have $K_Y + \Delta_Y = \pi^*(K_X + \Delta)$, where π denotes $Y \rightarrow X$. Let $K_S + \Delta_S = (K_Y + \Delta_Y)|_S$.

Assume G is not an isolated non-klt centre. Then some non-klt centre $H \neq G$ of (X, Δ) intersects G . Applying [Lemma 3.14](#), we can choose $P_F \geq 0$ in its \mathbb{R} -linear equivalence class such that the pair $(F, \Theta_F + P_F)$ is not ϵ -lc, a contradiction. In particular, (Y, Δ_Y) is plt near S and no component of $[\Delta_Y - S]$ intersects S .

Step 2. In this step we show that $E := \pi^*(-nrK_X)$ is an integral divisor near S and that it has bounded Cartier index near codimension one points on S . Since G is a general member of a covering family of subvarieties of X , the generic point of G is in the smooth locus of X ; hence K_X is Cartier near

this point. Thus the coefficient of S in E is integral, hence any component of E whose coefficient is not integral (if there is any) should be an exceptional divisor of π other than S . But such exceptional divisors do not intersect S , by Step 1. Therefore, E is integral near S .

Let V be a prime divisor on S . If V is horizontal over G , then E is Cartier near the generic point of V . Assume V is vertical over G . We want to show the Cartier index of E near the generic point of V is bounded. Let p be the Cartier index of $K_Y + S$ near the generic point of V . Then $\mu_V \Delta_S \geq 1 - \frac{1}{p}$ and the Cartier index of E near the generic point of V divides p [42, Prop. 3.9]. Therefore, $\frac{1}{p} \geq \epsilon$, otherwise $\mu_V \Delta_S > 1 - \epsilon$. Hence (S, Δ_S) is not ϵ -lc, so by Lemma 3.14, we can choose $P_F \geq 0$ so that $(F, \Theta_F + P_F)$ is not ϵ -lc, a contradiction. This means that p is bounded depending only on ϵ , and hence the Cartier index of E near the generic point of V is also bounded.

Step 3. In this step we use Kawamata-Viehweg vanishing to show that $h^1([lE - [\Gamma_Y] - N_Y]) = 0$ where $l \in \mathbb{N}$ is at least 2. Indeed pick $2 \leq l \in \mathbb{N}$, and define L by the relation

$$[lE - [\Gamma_Y] - N_Y] = lE - [\Gamma_Y] - N_Y + L.$$

Each component of L is either an exceptional/ X component of E or is a component of N_Y , and in either case the component cannot be S . Then $N_Y + L$ is supported in $[\Gamma_Y] - S$, which is disjoint from S by Step 1.

On the other hand, the \mathbb{Q} -divisor

$$\begin{aligned} I &:= lE - (K_Y + \Delta_Y) = \pi^*(-lnrK_X) - \pi^*(K_X + \Delta) \\ &\sim_{\mathbb{Q}} \pi^*(-lnrK_X) + \pi^*(nK_X) = -(lnr - n)\pi^*K_X \end{aligned}$$

is nef and big. Now we can write

$$\begin{aligned} [lE - [\Gamma_Y] - N_Y] &= lE - [\Gamma_Y] - N_Y + L \\ &\sim_{\mathbb{Q}} K_Y + \Delta_Y + I - [\Gamma_Y] - N_Y + L \\ &= K_Y + \Gamma_Y - [\Gamma_Y] + L + I. \end{aligned}$$

Moreover, $(Y, \Gamma_Y - [\Gamma_Y] + L)$ is klt because (Y, Γ_Y) is dlt and because L is supported in $[\Gamma_Y]$ with coefficients less than 1. Thus by the Kawamata-Viehweg vanishing theorem (cf. [36, Th. 2.70 and Cor. 5.27]), we get

$$h^1([lE - [\Gamma_Y] - N_Y]) = 0.$$

Step 4. In this step we lift sections of $[lE]|_S$ to Y from which we produce sections of $-lnrK_X$ for some bounded number l . Let $U \subseteq X$ be the largest open set on which $[lE - [\Gamma_Y] + S - N_Y]$ is Cartier. By Step 2, we can choose a bounded $l \geq 2$ so that no codimension two component of $X \setminus U$ is contained in S , where we use the fact that $[\Gamma_Y] - S + N_Y$ does not intersect S and that

E is integral near S . Thus the codimension of $S \setminus (S \cap U)$ in S is at least 2. Therefore, by Lemma 2.42, we have the exact sequence

$$0 \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_Y([\mathit{lE} - [\Gamma_Y] - N_Y]) \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_Y([\mathit{lE} - [\Gamma_Y] + S - N_Y]) \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_S([\mathit{lE}]|_S) \rightarrow 0.$$

Note that to apply the lemma we need S to be \mathbb{Q} -Cartier, which is the case as Y is \mathbb{Q} -factorial by construction.

On the other hand,

$$[\mathit{lE}]|_S = \mathit{lE}|_S = h^*(-\mathit{lnr}K_X|_F),$$

where h denotes $S \rightarrow F$, and by assumption, $h^0(-\mathit{lnr}K_X|_F) \neq 0$. Thus $h^0([\mathit{lE}]|_S) \neq 0$. Therefore, the above exact sequence combined with the vanishing at the end of Step 3 imply

$$h^0([\mathit{lE} - [\Gamma_Y] + S - N_Y]) \neq 0.$$

This in turn gives $h^0([\mathit{lE}]) \neq 0$ as $-[\Gamma_Y] + S - N_Y \leq 0$; hence we get $h^0(-\mathit{lnr}K_X) \neq 0$. □

4. Effective birationality

In this section we prove Theorem 1.2 under certain extra assumptions. These special cases are crucial for the proof of all the main results of this paper. One case is when we have an effective \mathbb{R} -divisor B whose coefficients are bounded from below and $K_X + B \sim_{\mathbb{R}} 0$ (Proposition 4.9); e.g., in practice when X is non-exceptional we can find such B using induction and complements. Another case is when singularities of X are canonical or close to being canonical (Proposition 4.11). Before we get to these results we make some technical preparations.

4.1. *Singularities in bounded families.* The next result roughly says that effective divisors with “degree” bounded from above cannot have too small lc thresholds, under appropriate assumptions. A far more general form of this is proved in [6, Th. 1.6], which is one of the key ingredients of the proof of BAB.

PROPOSITION 4.2. *Let $\epsilon \in \mathbb{R}^{>0}$, and let \mathcal{P} be a bounded set of couples. Then there is $\delta \in \mathbb{R}^{>0}$ depending only on ϵ, \mathcal{P} satisfying the following. Let (X, B) be a projective pair, and let T be a reduced divisor on X . Assume*

- (X, B) is ϵ -lc and $(X, \text{Supp } B + T) \in \mathcal{P}$;
- $L \geq 0$ is an \mathbb{R} -Cartier \mathbb{R} -divisor on X ;
- $L \sim_{\mathbb{R}} N$ for some \mathbb{R} -divisor N supported in T ; and
- the absolute value of each coefficient of N is at most δ .

Then $(X, B + L)$ is klt.

Proof. We may assume all the members of \mathcal{P} have the same dimension, say d . We prove the proposition by induction on d . Let $(X, B), T, L, N$ be as in

the statement for some δ , and assume $(X, B+L)$ is not klt. First assume $d = 1$. Then $\deg L \geq \epsilon$, hence $\deg N \geq \epsilon$. This is not possible if δ is small enough because $\deg N \leq \delta \deg T$ and $\deg T$ is bounded. So we can assume $d \geq 2$.

We can find a log resolution $\phi: W \rightarrow X$ of $(X, B+T)$ such that if we write

$$K_W + B_W = \phi^*(K_X + B) + E,$$

where $B_W \geq 0$ and $E \geq 0$ have no common components, and we let T_W be the sum of the birational transform of T and the reduced exceptional divisor ϕ , then (W, B_W) is ϵ -lc and $(W, \text{Supp } B_W + T_W)$ belongs to a bounded set of couples \mathcal{S} determined by some presentation of \mathcal{P} (as in [Section 2.19](#)). Let $L_W = \phi^*L$ and $N_W = \phi^*N$. Then there is $m \in \mathbb{N}$ depending only on \mathcal{P}, \mathcal{S} so that the absolute value of each coefficient of N_W is $\leq m\delta$. Therefore, we can replace \mathcal{P} with \mathcal{S} and replace $(X, B), T, L, N, \delta$ with $(W, B_W), T_W, L_W, N_W, m\delta$. Hence we assume from now on that $(X, \text{Supp } B + T)$ is log smooth.

We will argue that perhaps after replacing \mathcal{P} and modifying T, N we can assume that B and T have no common components and T is very ample. Write $T = \sum_1^q T_i$, where T_i are irreducible components. Since \mathcal{P} is bounded, there is a reduced divisor $\Gamma = \sum_1^{2q} \Gamma_i$ on X such that Γ_j are distinct prime very ample divisors that are not components of B , and $T_i \sim \Gamma_{2i} - \Gamma_{2i-1}$. Moreover, we can assume the couples $(X, \text{Supp } B + \Gamma)$ belong to a bounded family. Using the linear equivalences $T_i \sim \Gamma_{2i} - \Gamma_{2i-1}$, we can modify N so that it is now supported in Γ but still the absolute value of each of its coefficients is at most δ . Now replacing T with Γ and replacing \mathcal{P} accordingly, we can assume B and T have no common components and that T is very ample.

Now assume δ is sufficiently small. Let D be a prime divisor on birational models of X such that $a(D, X, B + L) \leq 0$. We show D is not a divisor on X . Since T is very ample and T^d is bounded, from $T^{d-1} \cdot L = T^{d-1} \cdot N \leq \delta T^d$ we deduce that if l is a coefficient of L , then $l \leq \delta T^d$. This shows that D cannot be a divisor on X as we can assume $\mu_D(B + L) \leq 1 - \epsilon + \delta T^d < 1$. Therefore, D is exceptional/ X .

Let V be the centre of D on X . First assume V is not inside $\text{Supp } B$. In this case we can remove B and assume $B = 0$. Let H be a general member of $|rT|$ intersecting V where r is sufficiently large depending on \mathcal{P} . Then H is irreducible and smooth, (X, H) is plt, but $(X, H + L)$ is not plt near any component of $V \cap H$. This implies (H, L_H) is not klt near any component of $V \cap H$ where $L_H = L|_H$ [[36](#), Th. 5.50]. The divisor $T|_H$ is reduced unless $\dim V = 2$ and V is the intersection point of two components of T in which case the coefficients of $T|_H$ are at most 2. Letting $N_H = N|_H$, we see that N_H is supported in $T_H := \text{Supp } T|_H$ with absolute value of coefficients $\leq 2\delta$. By construction, (H, T_H) belongs to a bounded set of couples \mathcal{Q} . So applying induction we get a contradiction as δ can be chosen according to \mathcal{Q} .

Now assume V is inside some component S of B . Let $\Delta = B + (1 - b)S$, where $b = \mu_S B$. Then (X, Δ) is plt and $[\Delta] = S$. Moreover, since $l := \mu_S L \leq \delta T^d$ (as observed above), we can assume $l = \mu_S L < \epsilon \leq 1 - b$, hence $B + L \leq \Delta + L - lS$. Thus V is a non-klt centre of $(X, \Delta + L - lS)$, and since $\mu_S(\Delta + L - lS) = 1$, S is also a non-klt centre of $(X, \Delta + L - lS)$. Thus $(X, \Delta + L - lS)$ is not plt near V .

Let $K_S + \Delta_S = (K_S + \Delta)|_S$ and $L_S = (L - lS)|_S$. Then (S, Δ_S) is ϵ -lc but $(S, \Delta_S + L_S)$ is not klt. Perhaps after adding some components to T , we can assume $S \sim S'$, where S' is supported in T and has bounded absolute value of coefficients. By construction, $L_S \sim_{\mathbb{R}} N_S := (N - lS')|_S$ is supported on $T_S := T|_S$ and the absolute value of each coefficient of N_S is at most $n\delta$ where $n \in \mathbb{N}$ depends only on \mathcal{P} . Moreover, $(S, \text{Supp } \Delta_S + T_S)$ belongs to a bounded set of couples \mathcal{R} . Now applying induction on induction we again get a contradiction. \square

4.3. *Log birational boundedness of certain pairs.* In various places in this paper we use the next statement to find a bounded birational model \overline{X} of a given variety X , e.g., proofs of Propositions 4.6, 4.9, and 4.11. This allows us to translate problems about X to problems about \overline{X} that are then more tractable.

PROPOSITION 4.4. *Let $d, v \in \mathbb{N}$, and let $\epsilon \in \mathbb{R}^{>0}$. Then there exist a number $c \in \mathbb{R}^{>0}$ and a bounded set of couples \mathcal{P} depending only on d, v, ϵ satisfying the following. Assume*

- X is a normal projective variety of dimension d ;
- $B \geq 0$ is an \mathbb{R} -divisor with coefficients in $\{0\} \cup [\epsilon, \infty)$;
- $M \geq 0$ is a nef \mathbb{Q} -divisor such that $|M|$ defines a birational map;
- $M - (K_X + B)$ is pseudo-effective;
- $\text{vol}(M) < v$; and
- if D is a component of M , then $\mu_D(B + M) \geq 1$.

Then there is a projective log smooth couple $(\overline{X}, \Sigma_{\overline{X}}) \in \mathcal{P}$ and a birational map $\overline{X} \dashrightarrow X$ such that

- (1) $\text{Supp } \Sigma_{\overline{X}}$ contains the exceptional divisor of $\overline{X} \dashrightarrow X$ and the birational transform of $\text{Supp}(B + M)$;
- (2) if $X' \rightarrow X$ and $X' \rightarrow \overline{X}$ is a common resolution and $M_{\overline{X}}$ is the pushdown of $M_{X'} := M|_{X'}$, then each coefficient of $M_{\overline{X}}$ is at most c ;
- (3) there is a resolution $W \rightarrow X$ such that $M_W := M|_W \sim A_W + R_W$, where A_W is the movable part of $|M_W|$, $|A_W|$ is base point free, and if $X' \rightarrow X$ factors through W , then $A_{X'} := A_W|_{X'} \sim 0/\overline{X}$.

Proof. First we give a short summary of the proof. Since $|M|$ defines a birational map, there is a resolution $\phi: W \rightarrow X$ such that ϕ^*M decomposes as the sum of a base point free movable part A_W and fixed part R_W .

Since $\text{vol}(M) < v$, the contraction defined by A_W gives a bounded birational model \overline{X} . To find $\Sigma_{\overline{X}}$ as in the statement, the idea is to argue that $\text{vol}(K_X + \Sigma + 2(2d + 1)A)$ is bounded from above, where A is the pushdown of A_W and Σ is the support of $B + M$ union a divisor derived from a multiple of A_W . Applying [17, Lemma 3.2] and [17, Lemma 2.4.2(4)] would then produce the required $(\overline{X}, \Sigma_{\overline{X}})$ after taking an appropriate resolution.

Step 1. In this step we introduce some basic notation. Since $|M|$ defines a birational map, M is big. Moreover, by Lemma 2.6, there is a log resolution $\phi: W \rightarrow X$ of $(X, \text{Supp}(B + M))$ such that

$$M_W := \phi^*M \sim A_W + R_W,$$

where A_W is the movable part of $|M_W|$, $|A_W|$ is based point free defining a birational contraction, and $R_W \geq 0$ is the fixed part. We can assume A_W is general in the linear system $|A_W|$. We denote the pushdown of A_W, R_W to X by A, R respectively. Note that R_W is only a \mathbb{Q} -divisor but R is integral.

Step 2. In this step we define an auxiliary boundary Ω_W on W . Decreasing ϵ we can assume $\epsilon \in (0, 1)$. Let $H_W \in |6dA_W|$ be general. Let D be a prime divisor on W . Then let the coefficient of D in Ω_W be

$$\mu_D \Omega_W := \begin{cases} 1 - \epsilon & \text{if } D \text{ is exceptional}/X, \\ 1 - \epsilon & \text{if } D \text{ is a component of } M_W, \\ \epsilon & \text{if } D \text{ is a component of } B^\sim \text{ but not of } M_W, \\ \frac{1}{2} & \text{if } D = H_W, \\ 0 & \text{otherwise,} \end{cases}$$

where B^\sim is the birational transform of B . The pair (W, Ω_W) is log smooth, and by Lemma 2.46, $K_W + \Omega_W$ is big.

Step 3. The aim of this step is to show that $\text{vol}(K_W + \Omega_W)$ is bounded from above. Since $M - (K_X + B)$ is pseudo-effective and since $\text{vol}(M) < v$,

$$\text{vol}(K_X + B + 5dM) < \text{vol}(6dM) < (6d)^d v.$$

Hence the left-hand side is bounded from above. Now we claim

$$\text{vol}(K_X + \Omega) \leq \text{vol}(K_X + B + 5dM),$$

where Ω is the pushdown of Ω_W . This follows if we show $B + 5dM - \Omega$ is big.

Let D be a component of Ω . Then either D is a component of M or a component of B or $D = H$ the pushdown of H_W . In the first case,

$$\mu_D \Omega = 1 - \epsilon < 1 \leq \mu_D(B + M),$$

where the inequality $1 \leq \mu_D(B + M)$ holds by assumption. If D is as in the second case but not the first case, then

$$\epsilon = \mu_D \Omega \leq \mu_D B \leq \mu_D(B + M).$$

So we get

$$B + M + \frac{1}{2}H - \Omega \geq 0.$$

On the other hand, $4dM - 3dA$ is big. Hence

$$4dM - \frac{1}{2}H \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 4dM - 3dA$$

is also big. This combined with the previous sentence implies the bigness of $B + 5dM - \Omega$.

We have shown that $\text{vol}(K_X + \Omega)$ is bounded from above. Thus since

$$\text{vol}(K_W + \Omega_W) \leq \text{vol}(K_X + \Omega),$$

we get the required boundedness of $\text{vol}(K_W + \Omega_W)$.

Step 4. In this step we show the existence of \mathcal{P} and $(\bar{X}, \Sigma_{\bar{X}})$ satisfying (1). To do this we need to show that (W, Ω_W) is log birationally bounded. Let $\Sigma_W := \text{Supp } \Omega_W$. First we show

$$\text{vol}(K_W + \Sigma_W + 2(2d + 1)A_W)$$

is bounded from above. Since $K_W + \Omega_W$ is big and since the coefficients of Ω_W belong to $\{\epsilon, \frac{1}{2}, 1 - \epsilon\}$, there is $\alpha \in (0, 1)$ depending only on d and ϵ such that $K_W + \alpha\Omega_W$ is big [18, Lemma 7.3]. By definition of Ω_W , taking a large but bounded number p , we get

$$\begin{aligned} \text{vol}(K_W + \Sigma_W + 2(2d + 1)A_W) &\leq \text{vol}(K_W + \Omega_W + p(1 - \alpha)\Omega_W) \\ &\leq \text{vol}(K_W + \Omega_W + p(K_W + \alpha\Omega_W) + p(1 - \alpha)\Omega_W) \\ &\leq \text{vol}((1 + p)(K_W + \Omega_W)), \end{aligned}$$

which shows the left-hand side volume is bounded from above.

By construction, $|A_W|$ is base point free defining a birational contraction. Thus by [17, Lemma 3.2], $\Sigma_W \cdot A_W^{d-1}$ is bounded from above. Therefore, (W, Ω_W) is log birationally bounded by [17, Lemma 2.4.2(4)] as the volume of A_W is bounded.

If $W \rightarrow \tilde{X}$ is the contraction defined by A_W , then $(\tilde{X}, \Sigma_{\tilde{X}})$ is log bounded where $\Sigma_{\tilde{X}}$ is the pushdown of Σ_W , and $\Sigma_{\tilde{X}}$ contains the exceptional divisor of $\tilde{X} \dashrightarrow X$ and the birational transform of $B + M$. Thus there is a log resolution $\bar{X} \rightarrow \tilde{X}$ of $(\tilde{X}, \Sigma_{\tilde{X}})$ such that if $\Sigma_{\bar{X}}$ is the sum of the reduced exceptional divisor of $\bar{X} \rightarrow \tilde{X}$ and the birational transform of $\Sigma_{\tilde{X}}$, then $(\bar{X}, \Sigma_{\bar{X}})$ is log smooth and belongs to a fixed bounded set of couples \mathcal{P} depending only on d, v, ϵ . Moreover, $\Sigma_{\bar{X}}$ contains the exceptional divisor of $\bar{X} \dashrightarrow X$ and the birational transform of $B + M$.

Step 5. In this step we prove (2) and (3). Take a common resolution $X' \rightarrow W$ and $X' \rightarrow \overline{X}$. Let $A_{X'}, R_{X'}, H_{X'}$ be the pullbacks of A_W, R_W, H_W , and let $A_{\overline{X}}, R_{\overline{X}}, H_{\overline{X}}$ be their pushdown to \overline{X} . By construction,

$$H_{X'} \sim 6dA_{X'}, \quad A_{X'} \sim 0/\overline{X}, \quad \text{and} \quad \Sigma_{\overline{X}} \geq \frac{1}{2}H_{\overline{X}}.$$

In particular, there is a number $b \in \mathbb{N}$ depending only on \mathcal{P} such that we can pick an ample Cartier divisor $C_{\overline{X}}$ so that $bH_{\overline{X}} - C_{\overline{X}}$ is big. Then $bH_{X'} - C_{X'}$ is also big, where $C_{X'}$ is the pullback of $C_{\overline{X}}$. Thus if $M_{X'}$ is the pullback of M_W and if $M_{\overline{X}}$ is the pushdown of $M_{X'}$, then we have

$$\begin{aligned} M_{\overline{X}} \cdot C_{\overline{X}}^{d-1} &= M_{X'} \cdot C_{X'}^{d-1} \leq \text{vol}(M_{X'} + C_{X'}) \\ &\leq \text{vol}(M_{X'} + bH_{X'}) \leq \text{vol}((1 + 6bd)M_{X'}), \end{aligned}$$

where the first inequality uses the fact that $M_{X'}, C_{X'}$ are both nef. Therefore, $M_{\overline{X}} \cdot C_{\overline{X}}^{d-1}$ is bounded from above, which implies the coefficients of $M_{\overline{X}}$ are bounded from above by some fixed number c . That is, (2) holds. Note that we have assumed that $X' \rightarrow X$ factors through $W \rightarrow X$ but (2) holds even if $X' \rightarrow X$ does not factor through $W \rightarrow X$ because $M_{\overline{X}}$ does not depend on the choice of the common resolution.

Finally, (3) holds as by construction $M_W \sim A_W + R_W$, where A_W is the movable part of $|M_W|$, $|A_W|$ is base point free, and $A_{X'} \sim 0/\overline{X}$. \square

4.5. *Boundedness of singularities on non-klt centres.* The next result is about boundedness of singularities on the normalisation of a non-klt centre in the context of adjunction as in 3.9. This is key to the proofs of Propositions 4.8, 4.11, and 5.1.

PROPOSITION 4.6. *Let $d, v \in \mathbb{N}$ and $\epsilon, \epsilon' \in \mathbb{R}^{>0}$ with $\epsilon' < \epsilon < \frac{1}{2}$. Then there exists $t \in \mathbb{R}^{>0}$ depending only on $d, v, \epsilon, \epsilon'$ satisfying the following. Assume $X, C, M, \Delta, G, F, \Theta_F, P_F$ are as follows:*

- (X, C) is a projective ϵ -lc pair of dimension d ;
- C is \mathbb{R} -Cartier with coefficients in $\{0\} \cup [\epsilon, 1 - \epsilon]$;
- M is an ample integral divisor and $|M|$ defines a birational map;
- $0 \leq \Delta \sim_{\mathbb{R}} \alpha M$ for some $0 < \alpha < t$;
- $K_X + C + \Delta$ is ample and $M - (K_X + C + \Delta)$ is big;
- G is a member of a covering family of subvarieties of X , with normalisation F ;
- there is a unique non-klt place of (X, Δ) whose centre is G ;
- the adjunction formula $K_F + \Theta_F + P_F \sim_{\mathbb{R}} (K_X + \Delta)|_F$ is as in Construction 3.9 assuming $P_F \geq 0$; and
- $\text{vol}(M|_F) < v$.

Then for any $0 \leq L_F \sim_{\mathbb{R}} M|_F$, the pair

$$(F, C|_F + \Theta_F + P_F + tL_F)$$

is ϵ' -lc.

Proof. We first give a summary of the proof. Note that the adjunction formula in the statement is as in [Construction 3.9](#) but with $B = 0$. After looking at the adjunction formula more closely and letting $C_F := C|_F$ and $M_F := M|_F$, and using [4.4](#), we will find a log bounded birational model $(\bar{F}, \Sigma_{\bar{F}})$ of $(F, \text{Supp}(\Theta_F + C_F + M_F))$. We then argue that

$$K_F + C_F + \Theta_F + P_F + tL_F$$

is ample, and hence its singularities cannot be worse than singularities of its “crepant pullback” to \bar{F} . At the end we apply [Proposition 4.2](#) to control singularities on \bar{F} .

Step 1. In this step we introduce some basic notation. We will assume $\dim G > 0$ otherwise the statement is vacuous. Since $|M|$ defines a birational map, we can assume $M \geq 0$. Moreover, changing M up to linear equivalence, by [Lemma 2.6](#), there is a log resolution $\phi: W \rightarrow X$ of $(X, \text{Supp}(C + M))$ such that we can write

$$M_W := \phi^*M = A_W + R_W,$$

where A_W is the movable part of $|M_W|$, $|A_W|$ is based point free defining a birational contraction, and $R_W \geq 0$ is the fixed part. We denote the pushdown of A_W, R_W to X by A, R respectively. Note that R_W is only a \mathbb{Q} -divisor but R is integral.

Step 2. In this step we have a closer look at the adjunction formula given in the statement and the related divisors. First note that since G is a general member of a covering family (as in [Section 2.27](#)), it is not contained in $\text{Supp}(C + M)$, and X is \mathbb{Q} -factorial near the generic point of G . By [Theorem 3.10](#) (here we take $B = 0$) and the ACC for lc thresholds [[18](#), Th. 1.1], the coefficients of Θ_F are in a fixed DCC set Ψ depending only on d .

Since both $K_X + C$ and C are \mathbb{R} -Cartier, K_X is \mathbb{Q} -Cartier. By [Lemma 3.12](#) (here again $B = 0$), we can write $K_F + \Lambda_F = K_X|_F$ where (F, Λ_F) is sub-klt and $\Lambda_F \leq \Theta_F$. On the other hand, since G is not contained in $\text{Supp} C$, the unique non-klt place of (X, Δ) whose centre is G is also a unique non-klt place of $(X, C + \Delta)$ whose centre is G . Thus applying [Lemma 3.12](#) once more (this time by taking $B = C$), we can write $K_F + \tilde{C}_F = (K_X + C)|_F$, where (F, \tilde{C}_F) is sub- ϵ -lc. Note that

$$\tilde{C}_F = \Lambda_F + C|_F \leq \Theta_F + C|_F.$$

Step 3. Let $C_F := C|_F$ and $M_F := M|_F$. In this step we show

$$(F, \text{Supp}(\Theta_F + C_F + M_F))$$

is log birationally bounded using [Proposition 4.4](#). Since G is a general member of a covering family, we can choose a log resolution $F' \rightarrow F$ of the above pair such that we have an induced morphism $F' \rightarrow W$ and that $|A_{F'}|$ defines a birational contraction where $A_{F'} := A_W|_{F'}$. Thus $|A_F|$ defines a birational map where A_F is the pushdown of $A_{F'}$. This in turn implies $|M_F|$ defines a birational map because $A_F \leq M_F$. Moreover,

$$K_F + C_F + \Theta_F + P_F \sim_{\mathbb{R}} (K_X + C + \Delta)|_F$$

is ample, and by the generality of G ,

$$M_F - (K_F + C_F + \Theta_F + P_F) \sim_{\mathbb{R}} (M - (K_X + C + \Delta))|_F$$

is big, which in turn implies

$$M_F - (K_F + C_F + \Theta_F)$$

is big as well.

On the other hand, by [Lemma 3.11](#), $\mu_D(\Theta_F + M_F) \geq 1$ for any component D of M_F . Applying the lemma once more, $\mu_D(\Theta_F + \frac{1}{\epsilon}C_F) \geq 1$ for any component D of C_F because each non-zero coefficient of $\frac{1}{\epsilon}C$ is at least 1. In particular, replacing ϵ with the minimum of $\Psi^{>0} \cup \{\epsilon\}$, we can assume the coefficients of $\Theta_F + C_F$ belong to $\{0\} \cup [\epsilon, \infty)$.

Now applying [Proposition 4.4](#) to $F, B_F := \Theta_F + C_F, M_F$, there is a bounded set of couples \mathcal{P} depending only on d, v, ϵ such that there is a projective log smooth couple $(\bar{F}, \Sigma_{\bar{F}}) \in \mathcal{P}$ and a birational map $\bar{F} \dashrightarrow F$ satisfying

- $\Sigma_{\bar{F}}$ contains the exceptional divisor of $\bar{F} \dashrightarrow F$ and the birational transform of $\text{Supp}(\Theta_F + C_F + M_F)$; and
- if $f: F' \rightarrow F$ and $g: F' \rightarrow \bar{F}$ is a common resolution and $M_{\bar{F}}$ is the pushdown of $M_F|_{F'}$, then each coefficient of $M_{\bar{F}}$ is at most c .

Step 4. In this step we compare log divisors on F and \bar{F} . First define $\Gamma_{\bar{F}} := (1-\epsilon)\Sigma_{\bar{F}}$. Let $K_{F'} + \tilde{C}_{F'}$ be the pullback of $K_F + \tilde{C}_F$, and let $K_{\bar{F}} + \tilde{C}_{\bar{F}}$ be the pushdown of $K_{F'} + \tilde{C}_{F'}$ to \bar{F} . We claim that $\tilde{C}_{\bar{F}} \leq \Gamma_{\bar{F}}$. If $\tilde{C}_{\bar{F}} \leq 0$, then the claim holds trivially. Assume $\tilde{C}_{\bar{F}}$ has a component D with positive coefficient. Then D is either exceptional/ F or is a component of the birational transform of \tilde{C}_F with positive coefficient. In the former case, D is a component of $\Sigma_{\bar{F}}$ because $\Sigma_{\bar{F}}$ contains the exceptional divisor of $\bar{F} \dashrightarrow F$. In the latter case, D is a component of the birational transform of $\Theta_F + C_F$ because $\tilde{C}_F \leq \Theta_F + C_F$ by Step 2. Hence, again D is a component of $\Sigma_{\bar{F}}$ as it contains the birational transform of $\text{Supp}(\Theta_F + C_F + M_F)$. Moreover, since (F, \tilde{C}_F) is sub- ϵ -lc, the

coefficient of D in $\tilde{C}_{\bar{F}}$ is at most $1 - \epsilon$, hence $\mu_D \tilde{C}_{\bar{F}} \leq \mu_D \Gamma_{\bar{F}}$. We have then proved the claim $\tilde{C}_{\bar{F}} \leq \Gamma_{\bar{F}}$.

Step 5. In this step we define a divisor I_F and compare singularities on F and \bar{F} . Let $I_F := \Theta_F + P_F - \Lambda_F$. By Step 2, $I_F \geq 0$. Pick $0 \leq L_F \sim_{\mathbb{R}} M_F$, and assume $t > 0$. Let $I_{\bar{F}}$ and $L_{\bar{F}}$ be the pushdowns of $I_F|_{F'}$ and $L_F|_{F'}$ to \bar{F} . Then

$$\begin{aligned} I_F + tL_F &= \Theta_F + P_F - \Lambda_F + tL_F = K_F + \Theta_F + P_F - K_F - \Lambda_F + tL_F \\ &\sim_{\mathbb{R}} (K_X + \Delta)|_F - K_X|_F + tM_F \sim_{\mathbb{R}} \Delta|_F + tM_F \sim_{\mathbb{R}} (\alpha + t)M_F. \end{aligned}$$

Thus we get

$$I_{\bar{F}} + tL_{\bar{F}} \sim_{\mathbb{R}} (\alpha + t)M_{\bar{F}}.$$

On the other hand, our assumptions ensure that

$$\begin{aligned} K_F + \tilde{C}_F + I_F + tL_F &= K_F + C_F + \Lambda_F + \Theta_F + P_F - \Lambda_F + tL_F \\ &= K_F + C_F + \Theta_F + P_F + tL_F \sim_{\mathbb{R}} (K_X + C + \Delta + tM)|_F \end{aligned}$$

is ample. Therefore,

$$f^*(K_F + \tilde{C}_F + I_F + tL_F) \leq g^*(K_{\bar{F}} + \tilde{C}_{\bar{F}} + I_{\bar{F}} + tL_{\bar{F}}),$$

which implies that

$$(F, \tilde{C}_F + I_F + tL_F)$$

is sub- ϵ' -lc if

$$(\bar{F}, \tilde{C}_{\bar{F}} + I_{\bar{F}} + tL_{\bar{F}})$$

is sub- ϵ' -lc.

Step 6. In this step we finish the proof using [Proposition 4.2](#). Pick $l \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $(l - 1)\epsilon > l\epsilon'$. Since the coefficients of $M_{\bar{F}}$ are bounded from above by c , by Step 3, applying [Proposition 4.2](#), we deduce that

$$(\bar{F}, \Gamma_{\bar{F}} + lI_{\bar{F}} + ltL_{\bar{F}})$$

is klt if $\alpha + t$ is sufficiently small depending only on \mathcal{P}, ϵ, c , recalling that $I_{\bar{F}} + tL_{\bar{F}} \sim_{\mathbb{R}} (\alpha + t)M_{\bar{F}}$ by the previous step. In particular, this holds assuming $t > 0$ is sufficiently small as $\alpha + t < 2t$. From now on we assume t is sufficiently small. Thus

$$(\bar{F}, \Gamma_{\bar{F}} + I_{\bar{F}} + tL_{\bar{F}})$$

is ϵ' -lc because for any prime divisor D on birational models of F , we have

$$\begin{aligned} a(D, \bar{F}, \Gamma_{\bar{F}} + I_{\bar{F}} + tL_{\bar{F}}) &= \left(\frac{l-1}{l}\right) a(D, \bar{F}, \Gamma_{\bar{F}}) \\ &\quad + \frac{1}{l} a(D, \bar{F}, \Gamma_{\bar{F}} + lI_{\bar{F}} + ltL_{\bar{F}}) \geq \left(\frac{l-1}{l}\right) \epsilon > \epsilon'. \end{aligned}$$

This then implies that

$$(\bar{F}, \tilde{C}_{\bar{F}} + I_{\bar{F}} + tL_{\bar{F}})$$

is sub- ϵ' -lc as $\tilde{C}_F \leq \Gamma_F$ by Step 4. Therefore, by Step 5,

$$(F, \tilde{C}_F + I_F + tL_F)$$

is also sub- ϵ' -lc. In other words,

$$(F, C_F + \Theta_F + P_F + tL_F)$$

is ϵ' -lc. □

4.7. Effective birationality for Fano varieties with good \mathbb{Q} -complements.

Our next result is an attempt to relate effective birationality on Fano varieties X and the volume of $-K_X$. This is crucial for the proofs of [Propositions 4.9](#) and [4.11](#).

PROPOSITION 4.8. *Let $d \in \mathbb{N}$ and $\epsilon, \delta \in \mathbb{R}^{>0}$. Then there exists a number $p \in \mathbb{N}$ depending only on d, ϵ , and δ satisfying the following. Assume*

- X is an ϵ -lc Fano variety of dimension d ;
- $m \in \mathbb{N}$ is the smallest number such that $|-mK_X|$ defines a birational map;
- $n \in \mathbb{N}$ is a number such that $\text{vol}(-nK_X) > (2d)^d$; and
- $nK_X + N \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$ for some \mathbb{Q} -divisor $N \geq 0$ with coefficients $\geq \delta$.

Then $\frac{m}{n} < p$.

Proof. The idea of the proof is to apply the frequently used method of showing birationality of a linear system by creating non-klt centres. If the centres we create happen to be zero dimensional, we are ready immediately. Otherwise the centres are positive dimensional and we can cut them and decrease their dimension unless the volume of the restriction of $-nK_X$ to these centres is too small, in which case we will get a contradiction by applying [4.6](#).

Step 1. If the proposition does not hold, then there is a sequence X_i, m_i, n_i, N_i of Fano varieties, numbers, and divisors as in the statement such that the numbers $\frac{m_i}{n_i}$ form a strictly increasing sequence approaching ∞ . At the end of the proof we will use [Proposition 4.6](#) to derive a contradiction.

Step 2. In this step we fix i and create a family of non-klt centres on X_i . Applying [2.31\(2\)](#), there is a covering family of subvarieties of X_i (as in [Section 2.27](#)) such that for any two general closed points $x_i, y_i \in X_i$, we can choose a member G_i of the family and choose a \mathbb{Q} -divisor $0 \leq \Delta_i \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} -(n_i + 1)K_{X_i}$ so that (X_i, Δ_i) is lc near x_i with a unique non-klt place whose centre contains x_i , that centre is G_i , and (X_i, Δ_i) is not klt near y_i . Note that since x_i, y_i are general, we can assume G_i is a general member of the family. Recall from [2.27](#) that this means the family is given by finitely many morphisms $V^j \rightarrow T^j$ of projective varieties with accompanying surjective morphisms $V^j \rightarrow X$ and that each G_i is a general fibre of one of these morphisms. Moreover, we

can assume the points of T^j corresponding to such G_i are dense in T^j . Let $d_i := \max\{\dim V^j - \dim T^j\}$.

If $d_i = 0$, that is, if $\dim G_i = 0$ for all the G_i , then $-2(n_i + 1)K_{X_i}$ is potentially birational. Hence $|K_{X_i} - 2(n_i + 1)K_{X_i}|$ defines a birational map [17, Lemma 2.3.4], which means $m_i \leq 2n_i + 1$ giving a contradiction as we can assume $m_i/n_i \gg 0$. Thus we can assume $d_i > 0$, so $\dim G_i > 0$ for all the G_i appearing as general fibres of $V^j \rightarrow T^j$ for some j .

Define $l_i \in \mathbb{N}$ to be the smallest number so that $\text{vol}(-l_i K_{X_i}|_{G_i}) > d^d$ for all the G_i with positive dimension. Then we can assume there is j so that if G_i is a general fibre of $V^j \rightarrow T^j$, then G_i is positive dimensional and $\text{vol}(-(l_i - 1)K_{X_i}|_{G_i}) \leq d^d$.

Step 3. Here we reduce the problem to the case when $\text{vol}(-m_i K_{X_i}|_{G_i})$ is bounded from above. Assume $\frac{l_i}{n_i}$ is bounded from above by some natural number a . Then after replacing n_i with dan_i and applying the second paragraph of 2.31(2), for each i , we can replace the positive dimensional G_i with new ones of smaller dimension, replace the family accordingly, and hence decrease the number d_i . Repeating the process we get to the situation in which we can assume $\frac{l_i}{n_i}$ is an increasing sequence approaching ∞ ; otherwise we get the case $d_i = 0$, which yields a contradiction as in Step 2. On the other hand, if $\frac{m_i}{l_i}$ is not bounded from above, then we can assume $\frac{m_i}{l_i}$ is an increasing sequence approaching ∞ . Hence we can replace n_i with l_i , in which case $\frac{l_i}{n_i}$ is bounded and we can argue as before. So we can assume $\frac{m_i}{l_i}$ is bounded from above.

In order to get a contradiction in the following steps it suffices to consider only those G_i that are positive dimensional and $\text{vol}(-(l_i - 1)K_{X_i}|_{G_i}) \leq d^d$. By Step 2, there is a sub-family of such G_i appearing as general fibres of some $V^j \rightarrow T^j$. *From now on when we mention G_i , we assume it is positive dimensional and it satisfies the inequality just stated.* In particular,

$$\text{vol}(-m_i K_{X_i}|_{G_i}) = \left(\frac{m_i}{l_i - 1}\right)^d \text{vol}(-(l_i - 1)K_{X_i}|_{G_i}) \leq \left(\frac{m_i}{l_i - 1}\right)^d d^d$$

is bounded from above, so $\text{vol}(-m_i K_{X_i}|_{G_i}) < v$ for some fixed number v independent of i .

Step 4. Let F_i be the normalisation of G_i . In this step we look at adjunction by restricting to F_i . Since G_i is a general member of a covering family, X_i is \mathbb{Q} -factorial near the generic point of G_i . By Construction 3.9 and Theorem 3.10 (by taking $B = 0$ and $\Delta = \Delta_i$), we can write

$$K_{F_i} + \Theta_{F_i} + P_{F_i} \sim_{\mathbb{R}} (K_{X_i} + \Delta_i)|_{F_i},$$

where P_{F_i} is pseudo-effective. Pick $0 \leq Q_i \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} -n_i K_{X_i}$ not containing x_i . By definition of Θ_{F_i} , adding Q_i to Δ_i does not change Θ_{F_i} but changes P_{F_i}

to $P_{F_i} + Q_i|_{F_i}$. Thus replacing n_i with $2n_i$ and changing P_{F_i} up to \mathbb{R} -linear equivalence we can assume P_{F_i} is effective and big.

Step 5. In this step we get a contradiction by applying [Proposition 4.6](#). By construction, $K_{X_i} + \Delta_i \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} -n_i K_{X_i}$ is ample. Let $M_i := -m_i K_{X_i}$ and $M_{F_i} := M_i|_{F_i}$. Then we can assume $M_i - (K_{X_i} + \Delta_i) \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} -(m_i - n_i)K_{X_i}$ is also ample. Moreover, $\Delta_i \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} \frac{n_i+1}{m_i} M_i$. On the other hand, since G_i is general, it is not contained in $\text{Supp } N_i$, so defining $N_{F_i} := N_i|_{F_i}$ we get the effective divisor $L_{F_i} := \frac{m_i}{n_i} N_{F_i}$. Since $N_i \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} -n_i K_{X_i}$, we get $L_{F_i} \sim_{\mathbb{R}} M_{F_i}$.

Now let t be the number given by [Proposition 4.6](#) for the data $d, v, \epsilon, \epsilon' = \frac{\epsilon}{2}$, where we can assume $\epsilon < \frac{1}{2}$ by decreasing it if necessary. We can assume $\frac{n_i+1}{m_i} < t$ for every i . Applying the proposition to $X_i, M_i, \Delta_i, G_i, F_i, \Theta_{F_i}, P_{F_i}$ (here we take $C_i = 0$), we deduce that

$$(F_i, \Theta_{F_i} + P_{F_i} + tL_{F_i})$$

is $\frac{\epsilon}{2}$ -lc for every i .

Let D be a component of $J_{F_i} := \frac{1}{\delta} N_{F_i}$. Since each coefficient of $\frac{1}{\delta} N_i$ is at least 1, by [Lemma 3.11](#),

$$\mu_D(\Theta_{F_i} + P_{F_i} + J_{F_i}) \geq \mu_D(\Theta_{F_i} + J_{F_i}) \geq 1.$$

By the previous paragraph, $\mu_D \Theta_{F_i} \leq 1 - \frac{\epsilon}{2}$, hence $\mu_D J_{F_i} \geq \frac{\epsilon}{2}$. But then

$$\mu_D tL_{F_i} = \left(\frac{t\delta m_i}{n_i} \right) \mu_D J_{F_i} = \frac{t\delta \epsilon m_i}{2n_i} \gg 0$$

when i is large. This contradicts the $\frac{\epsilon}{2}$ -lc property in the previous paragraph. \square

PROPOSITION 4.9. *Let $d \in \mathbb{N}$ and $\epsilon, \delta \in \mathbb{R}^{>0}$. Then there exists a number $m \in \mathbb{N}$ depending only on d, ϵ , and δ satisfying the following. Assume X is an ϵ -lc Fano variety of dimension d such that $K_X + B \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$ for some \mathbb{Q} -divisor $B \geq 0$ with coefficients $\geq \delta$. Then $|-mK_X|$ defines a birational map.*

Proof. Step 1. In this step we set up the notation and bound certain volumes. If the proposition is not true, then there is a sequence of Fano varieties X_i and \mathbb{Q} -divisors B_i satisfying the assumptions of the proposition but such that if $m_i \in \mathbb{N}$ is the smallest number so that $|-m_i K_{X_i}|$ defines a birational map, then the m_i form a strictly increasing sequence approaching ∞ . Let $n_i \in \mathbb{N}$ be the smallest number so that $\text{vol}(-n_i K_{X_i}) > (2d)^d$. Obviously the coefficients of $N_i := n_i B_i$ are $\geq \delta$, and $n_i K_{X_i} + N_i \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$. Thus by [Proposition 4.8](#), there is a number $p \in \mathbb{N}$ independent of i such that $\frac{m_i}{n_i} < p$. In particular, we can assume $n_i > 1$. Therefore, $\text{vol}(-m_i K_{X_i})$ is bounded from above because

$$\text{vol}(-m_i K_{X_i}) = \left(\frac{m_i}{n_i - 1} \right)^d \text{vol}(-(n_i - 1)K_{X_i}) \leq \left(\frac{m_i}{n_i - 1} \right)^d (2d)^d.$$

Step 2. In this step we find a bounded birational model of X . Let M_i be a general element of $|-m_iK_{X_i}|$. We show $(X_i, \text{Supp}(B_i + M_i))$ is log birationally bounded. After replacing ϵ with $\min\{\epsilon, \delta\}$, we can assume the coefficients of B_i belong to $\{0\} \cup [\epsilon, \infty)$. Applying [Proposition 4.4](#) to X_i, B_i, M_i , there is a bounded set of couples \mathcal{P} and a number $c \in \mathbb{R}^{>0}$ such that for each i there are a projective log smooth couple $(\bar{X}_i, \Sigma_{\bar{X}_i}) \in \mathcal{P}$ and a birational map $\bar{X}_i \dashrightarrow X_i$ such that

- $\text{Supp } \Sigma_{\bar{X}_i}$ contains the exceptional divisor of $\bar{X}_i \dashrightarrow X_i$ and the birational transform of $\text{Supp}(B_i + M_i)$; and
- if $W_i \rightarrow X_i$ and $W_i \rightarrow \bar{X}_i$ is a common resolution and $M_{\bar{X}_i}$ is the pushdown of $M|_{W_i}$, then each coefficient of $M_{\bar{X}_i}$ is at most c .

Step 3. In this step we derive a contradiction using [Proposition 4.2](#). Let $K_{W_i} + \Lambda_{W_i}$ be the pullback of K_{X_i} , and let $K_{\bar{X}_i} + \Lambda_{\bar{X}_i}$ be its pushdown on \bar{X}_i . The crepant pullback of

$$K_{X_i} + \Delta_i := K_{X_i} + \frac{1}{m_i}M_i \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$$

to \bar{X}_i is

$$K_{\bar{X}_i} + \Delta_{\bar{X}_i} := K_{\bar{X}_i} + \Lambda_{\bar{X}_i} + \frac{1}{m_i}M_{\bar{X}_i} \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0.$$

Note that the coefficients of $\Lambda_{\bar{X}_i}$ are at most $1 - \epsilon$ as X_i is ϵ -lc, and the support of $\Delta_{\bar{X}_i}$ is contained in $\Sigma_{\bar{X}_i}$.

By Step 2, if m_i is sufficiently large, then the coefficients of $\frac{1}{m_i}M_{\bar{X}_i}$ are sufficiently small. Therefore, letting $\Gamma_{\bar{X}_i} := (1 - \frac{\epsilon}{2})\Sigma_{\bar{X}_i}$, we have $\Delta_{\bar{X}_i} \leq \Gamma_{\bar{X}_i}$ for $i \gg 0$. Now let $L_i := \frac{1}{\delta}B_i$, which has coefficients ≥ 1 . Then $(X_i, \Delta_i + L_i)$ is not klt and $K_{X_i} + \Delta_i + L_i$ is ample. Therefore, if $L_{\bar{X}_i}$ is the pushdown of $L_i|_{X_i}$, then $(\bar{X}_i, \Delta_{\bar{X}_i} + L_{\bar{X}_i})$ is not sub-klt, which in turn implies $(\bar{X}_i, \Gamma_{\bar{X}_i} + L_{\bar{X}_i})$ is not klt. This contradicts [Proposition 4.2](#) because $L_{\bar{X}_i} \sim_{\mathbb{R}} \frac{1}{\delta m_i}M_{\bar{X}_i}$. \square

4.10. Effective birationality for nearly canonical Fano varieties. The next result treats one of the main special cases of [Theorem 1.2](#) when X has canonical or nearly canonical singularities. This is particularly useful when X is exceptional and we cannot create deep singularities using divisors $0 \leq D \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} -K_X$, e.g., at the end of proof of [Lemma 7.5](#), which is an inductive treatment of [Theorem 1.11](#).

PROPOSITION 4.11. *Let $d \in \mathbb{N}$. Then there exist numbers $\tau \in (0, 1)$ and $m \in \mathbb{N}$ depending only on d satisfying the following. If X is a τ -lc Fano variety of dimension d , then $|-mK_X|$ defines a birational map.*

Proof. We first give a short summary of the proof. Steps 1–4 are quite similar to those of the proof of [Proposition 4.8](#). We take $n \in \mathbb{N}$ so that

$\text{vol}(-nK_X) > (2d)^d$, and much of the proof is spent on showing $\frac{m}{n}$ is bounded from above arguing by contradiction. We create a covering family of non-klt centres G on X . Again the difficult case is when the centres are positive dimensional. We argue that singularities on the normalisation F of G cannot be too bad. Next we find a smooth and bounded birational model \overline{F} of F and reduce to the situation when $\kappa(K_{\overline{F}}) = 0$. This in turn allows us to reduce to the case when $h^0(-rK_X|_F) > 0$ for some bounded $r \in \mathbb{N}$. Next we use 3.15 to lift sections and produce some $N \geq 0$ with coefficients bounded from below and satisfying $nK_X + N \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$. At this point we apply 4.8 to deduce that $\frac{m}{n}$ is bounded from above. At the last step we work on a bounded birational model \overline{X} of X and apply 2.35 to show m is bounded from above.

Step 1. In this step we set up basic notation. If the proposition does not hold, then there is a sequence X_i of Fano varieties of dimension d and an increasing sequence ϵ_i of numbers in $(0, 1)$ approaching 1 such that X_i is ϵ_i -lc and if $m_i \in \mathbb{N}$ is the smallest number such that $|-m_iK_{X_i}|$ defines a birational map, then the m_i form an increasing sequence approaching ∞ . Let $n_i \in \mathbb{N}$ be a number so that $\text{vol}(-n_iK_{X_i}) > (2d)^d$. First we want to show $\frac{m_i}{n_i}$ is bounded from above. Assume this is not the case, so we can assume the $\frac{m_i}{n_i}$ form an increasing sequence approaching ∞ . We will derive a contradiction by the end of Step 9. Finally, in Step 10 we prove m_i is bounded, which is again a contradiction.

Step 2. In this step we fix i and create a covering family of non-klt centres on X_i . Applying 2.31(2), there is a covering family of subvarieties of X_i (as in Section 2.27) such that for any two general closed points $x_i, y_i \in X_i$, we can choose a member G_i of the family and choose a \mathbb{Q} -divisor $0 \leq \Delta_i \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} -(n_i + 1)K_{X_i}$ so that (X_i, Δ_i) is lc near x_i with a unique non-klt place whose centre contains x_i , that centre is G_i , and (X_i, Δ_i) is not klt near y_i . Note that since x_i, y_i are general, we can assume G_i is a general member of the family. Recall from 2.27 that this means the family is given by finitely many morphisms $V^j \rightarrow T^j$ of projective varieties with accompanying surjective morphisms $V^j \rightarrow X$ and that each G_i is a general fibre of one of these morphisms. Moreover, we can assume the points of T^j corresponding to such G_i are dense in T^j . Let $d_i := \max\{\dim V^j - \dim T^j\}$.

If $d_i = 0$, that is, if $\dim G_i = 0$ for all the G_i , then $-2(n_i + 1)K_{X_i}$ is potentially birational. Hence $|K_{X_i} - 2(n_i + 1)K_{X_i}|$ defines a birational map [17, Lemma 2.3.4], which means $m_i \leq 2n_i + 1$, giving a contradiction as we can assume $m_i/n_i \gg 0$. Thus we can assume $d_i > 0$; hence $\dim G_i > 0$ for all the G_i appearing as general fibres of $V^j \rightarrow T^j$ for some j .

Define $l_i \in \mathbb{N}$ to be the smallest number so that $\text{vol}(-l_iK_{X_i}|_{G_i}) > d^d$ for all the G_i with positive dimension. Then we can assume there is j so

that if G_i is a general fibre of $V^j \rightarrow T^j$, then G_i is positive dimensional and $\text{vol}(-(l_i - 1)K_{X_i}|_{G_i}) \leq d^d$.

Step 3. Here we reduce the problem to the case when $\text{vol}(-m_i K_{X_i}|_{G_i})$ is bounded from above. Assume $\frac{l_i}{n_i}$ is bounded from above by some natural number a . Then after replacing n_i with dan_i and applying the second paragraph of 2.31(2), for each i , we can replace the positive dimensional G_i with new ones of smaller dimension, replace the family accordingly, and hence decrease the number d_i . Repeating the process we get to the situation in which we can assume $\frac{l_i}{n_i}$ is an increasing sequence approaching ∞ ; otherwise we get the case $d_i = 0$, which yields a contradiction as in Step 2. On the other hand, if $\frac{m_i}{l_i}$ is not bounded from above, then we can assume $\frac{m_i}{l_i}$ is an increasing sequence approaching ∞ . Hence we can replace n_i with l_i , in which case $\frac{l_i}{n_i}$ is bounded and we can argue as before. So we can assume $\frac{m_i}{l_i}$ is bounded from above.

In order to get a contradiction, in the following steps it suffices to consider only those G_i that are positive dimensional and $\text{vol}(-(l_i - 1)K_{X_i}|_{G_i}) \leq d^d$. By Step 2, there is a sub-family of such G_i appearing as general fibres of some $V^j \rightarrow T^j$. *From now on when we mention G_i we assume it is positive dimensional and it satisfies the inequality just stated.* In particular,

$$\text{vol}(-m_i K_{X_i}|_{G_i}) = \left(\frac{m_i}{l_i - 1}\right)^d \text{vol}(-(l_i - 1)K_{X_i}|_{G_i}) \leq \left(\frac{m_i}{l_i - 1}\right)^d d^d$$

is bounded from above, so $\text{vol}(-m_i K_{X_i}|_{G_i}) < v$ for some fixed number v .

Step 4. Let F_i be the normalisation of G_i . In this step we look at adjunction by restricting to F_i . Since G_i is a general member of a covering family, X_i is \mathbb{Q} -factorial near the generic point of G_i . By Construction 3.9 and Theorem 3.10 (by taking $B = 0$ and $\Delta = \Delta_i$), we can write

$$K_{F_i} + \Delta_{F_i} := K_{F_i} + \Theta_{F_i} + P_{F_i} \sim_{\mathbb{R}} (K_{X_i} + \Delta_i)|_{F_i},$$

where P_{F_i} is pseudo-effective. Pick $0 \leq Q_i \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} -n_i K_{X_i}$ not containing x_i . By definition of Θ_{F_i} , adding Q_i to Δ_i does not change Θ_{F_i} but changes P_{F_i} to $P_{F_i} + Q_i|_{F_i}$. Thus replacing n_i with $2n_i$ and changing P_{F_i} up to \mathbb{R} -linear equivalence we can assume P_{F_i} is effective and big.

Step 5. In this step we reduce to the situation in which (F_i, Δ_{F_i}) is ϵ' -lc for some $\epsilon' > 0$ and where $\Theta_{F_i} = 0$ for every i . By construction, $K_{X_i} + \Delta_i \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} -n_i K_{X_i}$ is ample. Assume $0 \leq M_i \sim -m_i K_{X_i}$ and $M_{F_i} := M_i|_{F_i}$. Then we can assume $M_i - (K_{X_i} + \Delta_i) \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} -(m_i - n_i)K_{X_i}$ is also ample. Moreover, $\Delta_i \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} \frac{n_i+1}{m_i} M_i$. Pick $0 \leq L_{F_i} \sim_{\mathbb{R}} M_{F_i}$.

Let $\epsilon' < \epsilon$ be positive real numbers such that $\epsilon < \epsilon_i$ for every i . Now let t be the number given by Proposition 4.6 for the data $d, v, \epsilon, \epsilon'$. We can assume $\frac{n_i+1}{m_i} < t$ for every i . Applying the proposition to $X_i, M_i, \Delta_i, G_i, F_i, \Theta_{F_i}, P_{F_i}$

(here we take $C_i = 0$), we deduce that $(F_i, \Delta_{F_i} + tL_{F_i})$ is ϵ' -lc for every i , and hence (F_i, Δ_{F_i}) is ϵ' -lc for every i .

By [Theorem 3.10](#) and by the ACC for lc thresholds [[18](#), Th. 1.1], the coefficients of Θ_{F_i} belong to some fixed DCC set Ψ . We can assume ϵ_i is sufficiently close to 1, and so we can also choose ϵ' to be close to 1. This ensures that $\Theta_{F_i} = 0$ by the ϵ' -lc property of (F_i, Δ_{F_i}) and the fact that the coefficients of Θ_{F_i} are in the DCC set Ψ .

Step 6. In this step we find a bounded birational model of F_i . By [Lemma 3.11](#), $\mu_D M_{F_i} = \mu_D(\Theta_{F_i} + M_{F_i}) \geq 1$ for every component D of M_{F_i} . Moreover, $M_{F_i} - K_{F_i}$ is big because $M_{F_i} - (K_{F_i} + \Delta_{F_i})$ is ample and P_{F_i} is big. In addition, $|M_{F_i}|$ defines a birational map because $|M_i|$ defines a birational map and G_i is a general member of a covering family of subvarieties.

Now applying [Proposition 4.4](#) (by taking $X = F_i, B = \Theta_{F_i} = 0, M = M_{F_i}$), there is a bounded set of couples \mathcal{P} independent of i such that for each i , we can find a projective log smooth couple $(\overline{F}_i, \Sigma_{\overline{F}_i}) \in \mathcal{P}$ and a birational map $\overline{F}_i \dashrightarrow F_i$ such that

- $\text{Supp } \Sigma_{\overline{F}_i}$ contains the exceptional divisors of $\overline{F}_i \dashrightarrow F_i$ and the birational transform of $\text{Supp } M_{F_i}$;
- if $F'_i \rightarrow F_i$ and $F'_i \rightarrow \overline{F}_i$ is a common resolution and $M_{\overline{F}_i}$ is the pushdown of $M_{F'_i} := M|_{F'_i}$, then each coefficient of $M_{\overline{F}_i}$ is at most c ;
- $M_{F'_i} \sim A_{F'_i} + R_{F'_i}$, where $A_{F'_i}$ is big, $|A_{F'_i}|$ is base point free, $R_{F'_i} \geq 0$, and $A_{F'_i} \sim 0/\overline{F}_i$.

In addition we can assume $A_{F'_i}$ is reduced and that $A_{\overline{F}_i} \leq \Sigma_{\overline{F}_i}$, where $A_{\overline{F}_i}$ is the pushdown of $A_{F'_i}$.

Step 7. In this step we reduce to the situation in which $K_{\overline{F}_i}$ is pseudo-effective. By [Lemma 3.12](#), we can write $K_{F_i} + \Lambda_{F_i} = K_{X_i}|_{F_i}$, where $\Lambda_{F_i} \leq \Theta_{F_i} = 0$ and $(F_i + \Lambda_{F_i})$ is sub- ϵ_i -lc. Let $K_{F'_i} + \Lambda_{F'_i}$ and $M_{F'_i}$ be the pullbacks of $K_{F_i} + \Lambda_{F_i}$ and M_{F_i} respectively, and in turn let $K_{\overline{F}_i} + \Lambda_{\overline{F}_i}$ and $M_{\overline{F}_i}$ be their pushdowns to \overline{F}_i . From $K_{X_i} + \frac{1}{m_i} M_i \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$ we get

$$K_{\overline{F}_i} + \Lambda_{\overline{F}_i} + \frac{1}{m_i} M_{\overline{F}_i} \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0.$$

Moreover, any component of $\Lambda_{\overline{F}_i}$ with positive coefficient is exceptional/ F_i , hence a component of $\Sigma_{\overline{F}_i}$, and its coefficient in $\Lambda_{\overline{F}_i}$ is at most $1 - \epsilon_i$. So the coefficients of $(\Lambda_{\overline{F}_i} + \frac{1}{m_i} M_{\overline{F}_i})^{\geq 0}$ get arbitrarily small as i gets large. As $(\overline{F}_i, \Sigma_{\overline{F}_i})$ is log bounded and

$$\text{Supp} \left(\Lambda_{\overline{F}_i} + \frac{1}{m_i} M_{\overline{F}_i} \right)^{\geq 0} \subseteq \Sigma_{\overline{F}_i},$$

we can assume $K_{\overline{F}_i}$ is pseudo-effective for every i , by [Lemma 2.35](#).

Step 8. In this step we reduce to the situation in which $\kappa_\sigma(K_{\overline{F}_i}) = 0$ for every i . First assume $\kappa_\sigma(K_{\overline{F}_i}) > 0$ for every i . Perhaps after adding to $\Sigma_{\overline{F}_i}$ and replacing \mathcal{P} accordingly, we can assume that there is a very ample divisor $0 \leq H_{\overline{F}_i} \leq \Sigma_{\overline{F}_i}$ for each i . Now for each number $q \in \mathbb{N}$, there is a number $p \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $\text{vol}(pK_{\overline{F}_i} + H_{\overline{F}_i}) > q$ for every i , by [Lemma 2.40](#).

Since $A_{\overline{F}_i}$ is big and $A_{\overline{F}_i} \leq \Sigma_{\overline{F}_i}$, we can assume that there is $l \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $lA_{\overline{F}_i} - H_{\overline{F}_i}$ is big for each i . Thus $\text{vol}(pK_{\overline{F}_i} + lA_{\overline{F}_i}) > q$, which implies $\text{vol}(pK_{F'_i} + lA_{F'_i}) > q$, and this in turn gives $\text{vol}(pK_{F_i} + lA_{F_i}) > q$, where A_{F_i} is the pushdown of $A_{F'_i}$. Therefore, both sides of the inequality

$$\text{vol}\left(\frac{m_i}{n_i}(K_{F_i} + \Delta_{F_i}) + lA_{F_i}\right) \geq \text{vol}\left(\frac{m_i}{n_i}K_{F_i} + lA_{F_i}\right)$$

go to ∞ as i goes to ∞ . But

$$\begin{aligned} \text{vol}\left(\frac{m_i}{n_i}(K_{F_i} + \Delta_{F_i}) + lA_{F_i}\right) &= \text{vol}\left(\frac{m_i}{n_i}(-n_iK_{X_i})|_{F_i} + lA_{F_i}\right) \\ &\leq \text{vol}((-m_iK_{X_i} + lM_i)|_{F_i}) = \text{vol}((-m_i(1+l)K_{X_i})|_{F_i}) \end{aligned}$$

and the right-hand side is bounded from above, a contradiction. Thus from now on we can assume $\kappa_\sigma(K_{\overline{F}_i}) = 0$ for every i .

Step 9. In this step we get a contradiction for the assumption that the sequence $\frac{m_i}{n_i}$ approaches ∞ . Since $\kappa_\sigma(K_{\overline{F}_i}) = 0$, there is $r \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $h^0(rK_{\overline{F}_i}) \neq 0$ for every i , by [Lemma 2.37](#). Then $h^0(rK_{F_i}) \neq 0$ for every i , hence $rK_{F_i} \sim T_{F_i}$ for some integral divisor $T_{F_i} \geq 0$. First assume $T_{F_i} \neq 0$ for every i . Then

$$\begin{aligned} L_{F_i} &:= \frac{m_i}{n_i}\left(\Delta_{F_i} + \frac{1}{r}T_{F_i}\right) \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} \frac{m_i}{n_i}(K_{F_i} + \Delta_{F_i}) \sim_{\mathbb{R}} \frac{m_i}{n_i}(K_{X_i} + \Delta_i)|_{F_i} \\ &\sim_{\mathbb{Q}} \frac{m_i}{n_i}(-n_iK_{X_i})|_{F_i} \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} M_i|_{F_i} = M_{F_i} \end{aligned}$$

and $L_{F_i} \geq \frac{m_i}{rn_i}T_{F_i}$. In particular, $(F_i, \Delta_{F_i} + tL_{F_i})$ is not klt for any $i \gg 0$ where t is as in [Step 5](#), a contradiction.

Now we can assume $T_{F_i} = 0$ for every i . Then

$$h^0(-rK_{X_i}|_{F_i}) = h^0(-r(K_{F_i} + \Lambda_{F_i})) = h^0(-r\Lambda_{F_i}) \neq 0$$

for every i because $\Lambda_{F_i} \leq 0$ by [Step 7](#). Thus by [Step 5](#) and [Proposition 3.15](#), perhaps after replacing r with a multiple, $h^0(-n_i r K_{X_i}) \neq 0$ for every i . Then $n_i K_{X_i} + N_i \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$ for some $N_i \geq 0$ with coefficients $\geq \frac{1}{r}$. We can then apply [Proposition 4.8](#) to deduce that $\frac{m_i}{n_i}$ is bounded from above, a contradiction.

Step 10. In this final step we get a contradiction for the assumption that m_i is not bounded. At this point we let $n_i \in \mathbb{N}$ be the smallest number so that $\text{vol}(-n_i K_X) > (2d)^d$. We can assume $n_i > 1$ for every i since $\frac{m_i}{n_i}$ is bounded from above. The volume $\text{vol}(-m_i K_{X_i})$ is bounded from above because

$$\text{vol}(-m_i K_{X_i}) = \left(\frac{m_i}{n_i - 1}\right)^d \text{vol}(-(n_i - 1)K_{X_i}) \leq \left(\frac{m_i}{n_i - 1}\right)^d (2d)^d.$$

Then by [Proposition 4.4](#), there are a bounded set of couples \mathcal{Q} and a number $c' \in \mathbb{R}^{>0}$ such that for each i , there are a projective log smooth couple $(\bar{X}_i, \Sigma_{\bar{X}_i}) \in \mathcal{Q}$ and a birational map $\bar{X}_i \dashrightarrow X_i$ such that

- $\text{Supp } \Sigma_{\bar{X}_i}$ contains the exceptional divisor of $\bar{X}_i \dashrightarrow X_i$ and the birational transform of $\text{Supp}(M_i)$; and
- if $W_i \rightarrow X_i$ and $W_i \rightarrow \bar{X}_i$ is a common resolution and $M_{\bar{X}_i}$ is the pushdown of $M_i|_{W_i}$, then each coefficient of $M_{\bar{X}_i}$ is at most c' .

Let $K_{W_i} + \Lambda_{W_i}$ be the pullback of K_{X_i} , and let $K_{\bar{X}_i} + \Lambda_{\bar{X}_i}$ be its pushdown on \bar{X}_i . The crepant pullback of $K_{X_i} + \frac{1}{m_i}M_i$ to \bar{X}_i is

$$K_{\bar{X}_i} + \Lambda_{\bar{X}_i} + \frac{1}{m_i}M_{\bar{X}_i} \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0.$$

Note that the coefficients of $\Lambda_{\bar{X}_i}$ are at most $1 - \epsilon_i$, which are either negative or approach 0 as i goes to ∞ . So if i is sufficiently large, then the coefficients of $(\Lambda_{\bar{X}_i} + \frac{1}{m_i}M_{\bar{X}_i})^{\geq 0}$ are sufficiently small. Thus $K_{\bar{X}_i}$ is pseudo-effective for every $i \gg 0$, by [Lemma 2.35](#). This is a contradiction because K_{W_i} is not pseudo-effective as K_{X_i} is not pseudo-effective, and hence $K_{\bar{X}_i}$ is not pseudo-effective for any i . Therefore, m_i is bounded as required. \square

5. Proof of Theorem 1.4

In this section we prove [Theorem 1.4](#). The main difficulty is to bound the anti-canonical volume, which we tackle now before going into the proof of the theorem.

PROPOSITION 5.1. *Let $d \in \mathbb{N}$ and $\epsilon, \delta \in \mathbb{R}^{>0}$. Then there is a number v depending only on d, ϵ , and δ such that for any X as in [Theorem 1.4](#), we have $\text{vol}(-K_X) < v$.*

Proof. We first give a short summary of the proof. Using MMP we reduce to the case when X is Fano. If $\text{vol}(-K_X)$ is very large, then there is a very small $a > 0$ such that $\text{vol}(-aK_X) > (2d)^d$. We will show that this leads to a contradiction by using arguments somewhat similar to the proof of [Proposition 4.8](#). Using divisors $0 \leq \Delta \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} -aK_X$ we create a covering family of non-klt centres G of the pairs (X, Δ) such that the pair has other non-klt centres apart from G . The difficult case is when $\dim G > 0$, just as in the proof of [Proposition 4.8](#). Using the fact that (X, Δ) has other non-klt centres apart

from G , we can create bad singularities on the normalisation F of G . Finally, making use of B and applying 4.6 we derive a contradiction.

Step 1. In this step we reduce the problem to the situation in which X is Fano, and we introduce some notation. If the statement is not true, then there is a sequence of pairs (X_i, B_i) satisfying the properties listed in [Theorem 1.4](#) such that $\text{vol}(-K_{X_i})$ is an increasing sequence approaching ∞ . Taking a \mathbb{Q} -factorialisation we can assume X_i is \mathbb{Q} -factorial. Since B_i is big, X_i is of Fano type. Run an MMP on $-K_{X_i} \sim_{\mathbb{R}} B_i$, and let X'_i be the resulting model. Since B_i is big, $-K_{X'_i}$ is nef and big. Thus if $X'_i \rightarrow X''_i$ is the contraction defined by $-K_{X'_i}$, then X''_i is Fano. Moreover, $\text{vol}(-K_{X''_i}) = \text{vol}(-K_{X_i})$, and since $K_{X_i} + B_i \sim_{\mathbb{R}} 0$, (X''_i, B''_i) is ϵ -lc. Thus replacing (X_i, B_i) with (X''_i, B''_i) , we can assume X_i is Fano. Moreover, modifying B_i , we can assume it is a \mathbb{Q} -boundary.

By [Proposition 4.9](#), there is $m \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $|-mK_{X_i}|$ defines a birational map for every i . On the other hand, since $\text{vol}(-K_{X_i})$ is an increasing sequence approaching ∞ , there is a strictly decreasing sequence $a_i \in \mathbb{Q}^{>0}$ approaching 0 so that $\text{vol}(-a_i K_{X_i}) > (2d)^d$ for each i .

Step 2. In this step we fix i and create a covering family of non-klt centres on X_i . Applying 2.31(2), there exists a covering family of subvarieties of X_i such that for each pair of general closed points $x_i, y_i \in X_i$, there exist a general member G_i of the family and a \mathbb{Q} -divisor $0 \leq \Delta_i \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} -a_i K_{X_i}$ such that (X_i, Δ_i) is lc at x_i with a unique non-klt place whose centre contains x_i , that centre is G_i , and (X_i, Δ_i) is not klt at y_i . Moreover, perhaps after replacing a_i with $3a_i$ and adding to Δ_i we can assume that (X_i, Δ_i) is not lc at some fixed point of X_i . Indeed applying 2.31(2), there is $0 \leq \Xi_i \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} -a_i K_{X_i}$ such that (X_i, Ξ_i) is not klt at some point $\xi_i \in X_i$; here Ξ_i, ξ_i are fixed. Then by adding $2\Xi_i$ to Δ_i we can assume that (X_i, Δ_i) is not lc at ξ_i . Note that since x_i is general, we are of course assuming $x_i \neq \xi_i$.

Recall from 2.27 that the G_i in the last paragraph are among the general fibres of finitely many morphisms $V^j \rightarrow T^j$, and we can assume that for each j , the points on T^j corresponding to the G_i are dense. We can assume $K_{X_i} + \Delta_i$ is anti-ample, so by the connectedness principle, $\dim G_i > 0$.

Step 3. In this step we reduce the problem to the situation in which $\text{vol}(-mK_{X_i}|_{G_i})$ is bounded from above. For each i , let $b_i \in \mathbb{Q}$ be the smallest number so that $\text{vol}(-b_i K_{X_i}|_{G_i}) \geq d^d + 1$ for all the G_i in Step 2; equality holds on a sub-family of the G_i that are general fibres of one of the morphisms $V^j \rightarrow T^j$.

Assume b_i is not bounded from below, so we can assume the b_i form a strictly decreasing sequence approaching 0. Applying the second paragraph

of 2.31(2), replacing a_i with $a_i + (d - 1)b_i$ and replacing the Δ_i , we can replace each G_i with one having smaller dimension. Introducing new b_i as above and repeating the process leads us to the case when b_i is bounded from below. Otherwise we get the case $\dim G_i = 0$ which, as mentioned above, is not possible.

In order to get a contradiction, it is enough, for each i , to consider a sub-family of the G_i satisfying $\text{vol}(-b_i K_{X_i}|_{G_i}) = d^d + 1$ and that are general fibres of one of the morphisms $V^j \rightarrow T^j$. From now on when we mention G_i we mean one of those. In particular, $\text{vol}(-mK_{X_i}|_{G_i})$ is bounded from above as b_i is bounded from below.

Step 4. In this step we consider adjunction on non-klt centres. For each i , pick a general G_i as in the last paragraph, and let F_i be its normalisation. In particular, X_i is \mathbb{Q} -factorial near the generic point of G_i , and we can find a resolution $F'_i \rightarrow F_i$ so that we get an induced morphism $F'_i \rightarrow W_i$. Pick $0 \leq M_i \sim -mK_{X_i}$. Then G_i is not contained in $\text{Supp } M_i$ by the generality of G_i .

By Construction 3.9 and Theorem 3.10 (by taking $B = 0$ and $\Delta = \Delta_i$) and the ACC for lc thresholds [18, Th. 1.1], there is a \mathbb{Q} -boundary Θ_{F_i} with coefficients in a fixed DCC set Ψ depending only on d such that we can write

$$(K_{X_i} + \Delta_i)|_{F_i} \sim_{\mathbb{R}} K_{F_i} + \Delta_{F_i} := K_{F_i} + \Theta_{F_i} + P_{F_i},$$

where P_{F_i} is pseudo-effective. Since x_i is general, $x_i \notin \text{Supp } M_i$. By definition of Θ_{F_i} , adding $\lambda_i M_i$ to Δ_i does not change Θ_{F_i} but changes P_{F_i} to $P_{F_i} + \lambda_i M_i|_{F_i}$, where λ_i is a sufficiently small positive rational number. Thus replacing a_i and changing P_{F_i} up to \mathbb{R} -linear equivalence we can assume P_{F_i} is effective and big.

Step 5. In this step we use Proposition 4.6 to derive a contradiction. Pick $\epsilon' \in (0, \epsilon)$. By the connectedness principle, the non-klt locus of (X_i, Δ_i) is connected. Since (X_i, Δ_i) is not lc at some point ξ_i by Step 2, the pair has a non-klt centre intersecting G_i but not equal to G_i . By Lemma 3.14, we can choose $P_{F_i} \geq 0$ so that (F_i, Δ_{F_i}) is not ϵ' -lc.

On the other hand, by construction, both $K_{X_i} + B_i + \Delta_i \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} \Delta_i$ and

$$M_i - (K_{X_i} + B_i + \Delta_i) \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} M_i - \Delta_i \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} -(m - a_i)K_{X_i}$$

are ample, $\Delta_i \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} \frac{a_i}{m} M_i$, and $\text{vol}(M_i|_{F_i})$ is bounded from above. Moreover, decreasing ϵ we can assume $\epsilon \leq \delta$, hence the coefficients of B_i are $\geq \epsilon$. Therefore, by Proposition 4.6, $(F_i, B_i|_{F_i} + \Delta_{F_i})$ is ϵ' -lc, which contradicts the previous paragraph. \square

Proof of Theorem 1.4. Let $X' \rightarrow X$ be a small \mathbb{Q} -factorialisation. Run an MMP on $-K_{X'}$, and let X'' be the resulting model. Since B is big, $-K_{X''}$ is nef and big; that is, X'' is a weak Fano. Assume $X'' \rightarrow X'''$ is the contraction defined by $-K_{X''}$; hence X''' is Fano. By Lemma 2.26, it is enough to show

that such X''' form a bounded family. Therefore, replacing X with X'' we can assume X is Fano.

Pick $\epsilon' \in (0, \epsilon)$. Let $\Delta = (1+t)B$ for some $t > 0$ so that (X, Δ) is ϵ' -lc. By [18, Th. 1.6], it is enough to show (X, Δ) is log birationally bounded, which is equivalent to showing (X, B) is log birationally bounded.

By Proposition 4.9, there is $m \in \mathbb{N}$ depending only on d, ϵ, δ such that $|-mK_X|$ defines a birational map. Moreover, by Proposition 5.1, $\text{vol}(-mK_X)$ is bounded from above. Therefore, applying Proposition 4.4 by taking some $0 \leq M \sim -mK_X$, we deduce that $(X, \text{Supp } B)$ is log birationally bounded as required. \square

6. Boundedness of complements

In this section we develop the theory of complements for generalised pairs following [43], [39], and [40]]. We prove various inductive statements before we come to the main result of this section (Proposition 6.13). Let $(X', B' + M')$ be as in Theorem 1.10. Such pairs are of two types: non-exceptional and exceptional. The main point of this section is that we can treat the non-exceptional ones inductively by creating generalised non-klt centres or by using fibrations. The exceptional case is treated in the next section, where the focus will be on proving that X' is bounded.

Assume $(X', B' + M')$ is non-exceptional. The main ideas in constructing a bounded complement for $K_{X'} + B' + M'$ are essentially as follows. By creating deep singularities and then modifying the pair we can assume $(X', B' + M')$ is not generalised klt and $B' \in \mathfrak{R}$. If $K_{X'} + B' + M' \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$ and $M' \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$, we show the Cartier index of $K_{X'} + B'$ is bounded, which implies we have a bounded complement (as in the proof of Lemma 6.11). We then can assume either $K_{X'} + B' + M' \not\sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$ or $M' \not\sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$.

Let $X' \rightarrow V'$ be the contraction defined by $-(K_{X'} + B' + M')$. If M' is not big over V' , then we pull back a complement from the base of some fibration $X' \rightarrow T'$ derived from $X' \rightarrow V'$ (as in the proof of Proposition 6.5). Thus we assume M' is big over V' . We then modify the setting and find a boundary Γ' and number $\alpha \in (0, 1)$ such that $(X', \Gamma' + \alpha M')$ is generalised plt with $S' := \lfloor \Gamma' \rfloor$ irreducible and $-(K_{X'} + \Gamma' + \alpha M')$ is ample (as in the proof of Proposition 6.8). Using this plt pair and the ampleness mentioned we can apply Kawamata-Viehweg vanishing on some resolution of X' to lift a complement from S' to X' (Proposition 6.7).

Carrying out all the steps above and making sure that the required inductive assumptions are satisfied (e.g., (6.3)) involves a lot of technicalities.

6.1. *General remarks.* Let $(X', B' + M')$ be a projective generalised pair with data $\phi: X \rightarrow X'$ and M .

(1) Assume there is $B'^+ \geq B'$ such that $(X', B'^+ + M')$ is generalised lc, nM is b-Cartier, and $n(K_{X'} + B'^+ + M') \sim 0$ for some $n \in \mathbb{N}$. We show $K_{X'} + B'^+ + M'$ is an n -complement of $K_{X'} + B' + M'$. Writing $B' = T' + \Delta'$ where $T' = \lfloor B' \rfloor$, we need to show

$$nB'^+ \geq nT' + \lfloor (n+1)\Delta' \rfloor.$$

Note that T' and Δ' have no common components.

Let D' be a prime divisor and b' and b'^+ be its coefficients in B' and B'^+ . If $b'^+ = 1$, then either $b' = 1$, in which case $nb'^+ = nb'$, or $b' < 1$, in which case $nb'^+ = n \geq \lfloor (n+1)b' \rfloor$. So assume $b'^+ < 1$, say $b'^+ = \frac{i}{n}$. Then

$$nb'^+ = i = \lfloor (n+1)b'^+ \rfloor \geq \lfloor (n+1)b' \rfloor.$$

(2) Assume $X' \dashrightarrow X''$ is a birational map to a normal projective variety. Replacing X we can assume the induced map $\psi: X \dashrightarrow X''$ is a morphism. Let $M'' = \psi_*M$, and assume

$$\phi^*(K_{X'} + B' + M') + P = \psi^*(K_{X''} + B'' + M'')$$

for some $P \geq 0$ and $B'' \geq 0$. Suppose $K_{X''} + B'' + M''$ has an n -complement $K_{X''} + B''^+ + M''$ with $B''^+ \geq B''$. We claim $K_{X'} + B' + M'$ also has an n -complement $K_{X'} + B'^+ + M'$ with $B'^+ \geq B'$. Let $C'' = B''^+ - B''$, and let $B'^+ = B' + \phi_*(P + \psi^*C'')$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} K_{X'} + B'^+ + M' &= K_{X'} + B' + M' + \phi_*P + n\phi_*\psi^*C'' \\ &= \phi_*\psi^*(K_{X''} + B'' + M'') + \phi_*\psi^*C'' = \phi_*\psi^*(K_{X''} + B''^+ + M''), \end{aligned}$$

which implies that

$$n(K_{X'} + B'^+ + M') \sim 0 \text{ and } \phi^*(K_{X'} + B'^+ + M') = \psi^*(K_{X''} + B''^+ + M'').$$

In particular, $(X', B'^+ + M')$ is generalised lc. Now apply (1).

(3) Assume $X' \dashrightarrow X''$ is a partial MMP on $-(K_{X'} + B' + M')$ and B'', M'' are the pushdowns of B', M' . Then there is $P \geq 0$ as in (2). Thus if $K_{X''} + B'' + M''$ has an n -complement $K_{X''} + B''^+ + M''$ with $B''^+ \geq B''$, then $K_{X'} + B' + M'$ has an n -complement $K_{X'} + B'^+ + M'$ with $B'^+ \geq B'$.

6.2. Hyperstandard coefficients under adjunction for fibre spaces. To construct complements we sometimes come across fibrations $X \rightarrow Z$ along which a given log divisor $K_X + B$ is trivial. Using adjunction for fibre spaces (3.4) we can write $K_X + B$ as the pullback of $K_Z + B_Z + M_Z$, where B_Z and M_Z are the discriminant and moduli divisors. In order to apply induction we need to be able to control the coefficients of B_Z and M_Z in terms of the coefficients of B . We do this in the next proposition. The existence of \mathfrak{S} is similar to [40, Lemma 9.3(i)].

PROPOSITION 6.3. *Let $d \in \mathbb{N}$ and $\mathfrak{R} \subset [0, 1]$ be a finite set of rational numbers. Assume [Theorem 1.8](#) holds in dimension d . Then there exist $q \in \mathbb{N}$ and a finite set of rational numbers $\mathfrak{S} \subset [0, 1]$ depending only on d, \mathfrak{R} satisfying the following. Assume (X, B) is a pair and $f: X \rightarrow Z$ a contraction such that*

- (X, B) is projective lc of dimension d , and $\dim Z > 0$;
- $K_X + B \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0/Z$ and $B \in \Phi(\mathfrak{R})$;
- X is of Fano type over some non-empty open subset $U \subseteq Z$; and
- the generic point of each non-klt centre of (X, B) maps into U .

Then we can write

$$q(K_X + B) \sim qf^*(K_Z + B_Z + M_Z),$$

where B_Z and M_Z are the discriminant and moduli parts of adjunction (as in [Section 3.4](#)), $B_Z \in \Phi(\mathfrak{S})$, and for any high resolution $Z' \rightarrow Z$, the moduli divisor $qM_{Z'}$ is nef Cartier.

Proof. Here is a short summary of the proof. [Using 1.8](#) we find q and make a specific choice of M_Z as a Weil divisor. Next we aim to show the existence of \mathfrak{S} and that qM_Z is integral. By taking hyperplane sections on Z we reduce this aim to the case when Z is a curve. We then pick a closed point $z \in Z$ and use [1.8](#) once more to create a q -complement $K_X + B^+$ over z so that $B^+ \geq B$ and (X, B^+) has a non-klt centre mapping to z . This implies that the coefficient of z in B_Z belongs to special set of the form $\Phi(\mathfrak{S})$, which in turn implies that qM_Z is integral. Finally, we go back to the general case of Z and apply the previous arguments to a high enough resolution $Z' \rightarrow Z$ to show that $qM_{Z'}$ is Cartier. (Nefness is guaranteed by [3.6](#).)

Step 1. In this step we find q and make a choice of M_Z . Let $q = n$ be the number given by [Theorem 1.8](#) that depends only on d, \mathfrak{R} . Then there is a q -complement $K_X + B^+$ of $K_X + B$ over some point $z \in U$ with $B^+ \geq B$. Since over z we have $K_X + B \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$ and $q(K_X + B^+) \sim 0$, and since $B^+ \geq B$, we have $B^+ = B$ near the generic fibre of f . Therefore, $q(K_X + B) \sim 0$ over the generic point of Z , and hence there is a rational function α on X such that $qL := q(K_X + B) + \text{Div}(\alpha)$ is zero over the generic point of Z . In particular, $q(K_X + B) \sim qL$ and L is vertical/ Z . Since $L \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0/Z$, $L = f^*L_Z$ for some L_Z on Z . Let $M_Z := L_Z - (K_Z + B_Z)$, where B_Z is the discriminant part of adjunction for (X, B) over Z . Thus

$$q(K_X + B) \sim qL = qf^*L_Z = qf^*(K_Z + B_Z + M_Z),$$

and M_Z is the moduli part of adjunction for (X, B) over Z . Note that M_Z is not unique: it depends on the choice of α and K_Z .

Step 2. Our aim until the end of [Step 4](#) is to show the existence of \mathfrak{S} and to show qM_Z is integral. In this step we reduce this aim to the case

$\dim Z = 1$. Assume $\dim Z > 1$. Let H be a general hyperplane section of Z and G its pullback to X . Let $K_G + B_G = (K_X + B + G)|_G$. Since G is a general member of a free linear system, each non-klt centre of (G, B_G) is a component of the intersection of a non-klt centre of (X, B) with G . Hence its generic point maps into $U \cap H$. Moreover, G is of Fano type over $U \cap H$. Let B_H be the discriminant part of adjunction for (G, B_G) over H .

Let g be the induced map $G \rightarrow H$. Let D be a prime divisor on Z , and let C be a component of $D \cap H$. Let t be the lc threshold of f^*D with respect to (X, B) over the generic point of D . Then there is a non-klt centre of $(X, B + f^*D)$ mapping onto D . This centre is also a non-klt centre of $(X, B + G + f^*D)$. Hence intersecting it with G gives a non-klt centre of $(G, B_G + g^*C)$ mapping onto C , by inversion of adjunction [24]. Thus t is the lc threshold of g^*C with respect to (G, B_G) . Therefore, $\mu_D B_Z = \mu_C B_H$; see [7, proof of Lemma 3.2] for more details.

By Lemma 3.3, there is a finite set of rational numbers $\mathfrak{T} \subset [0, 1]$ depending only on \mathfrak{R} such that $B_G \in \Phi(\mathfrak{T})$. So applying induction on dimension, there is a finite set of rational numbers $\mathfrak{S} \subset [0, 1]$ depending only on $d - 1, \mathfrak{T}$ hence depending only on d, \mathfrak{R} such that $B_H \in \Phi(\mathfrak{S})$. Therefore, $B_Z \in \Phi(\mathfrak{S})$.

Pick a general $H' \sim H$ and let $K_H = (K_Z + H')|_H$. Note that although K_Z may not be \mathbb{Q} -Cartier, the restriction is well defined as H is a general hyperplane section, and K_H is determined as a Weil divisor. Letting $M_H := (L_Z + H')|_H - (K_H + B_H)$, we have

$$q(K_G + B_G) \sim q(L + G)|_G \sim qg^*(L_Z + H')|_H \sim qg^*(K_H + B_H + M_H).$$

Hence M_H is the moduli part of (G, B_G) over H . Moreover, $B_H + M_H = (B_Z + M_Z)|_H$, hence $\mu_C(B_H + M_H) = \mu_D(B_Z + M_Z)$, which implies $\mu_C M_H = \mu_D M_Z$ as $\mu_C B_H = \mu_D B_Z$. Therefore, $q\mu_D M_Z$ is integral if and only if $q\mu_C M_H$ is integral. So repeating the process we reduce the problem to the case $\dim Z = 1$.

Step 3. In this step we prove existence of \mathfrak{S} . By Step 2 we can assume Z is a curve. By Lemma 2.11, X is of Fano type over Z . Pick a closed point $z \in Z$. Let t be the lc threshold of f^*z with respect to (X, B) . Let $\Gamma = B + tf^*z$, and let (X', Γ') be a \mathbb{Q} -factorial dlt model of (X, Γ) so that $[\Gamma']$ has a component mapping to z . Note that $K_{X'} + \Gamma' \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0/Z$. Then there is a boundary $B' \leq \Gamma'$ such that $B' \in \Phi(\mathfrak{R})$, $[B']$ has a component mapping to z , and $B^{\sim} \leq B'$ where B^{\sim} is the birational transform of B . Now X' is of Fano type over Z and $-(K_{X'} + B') \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} \Gamma' - B'/Z$. Run an MMP on $-(K_{X'} + B')$ over Z , and let X'' be the resulting model. Then X'' is of Fano type over Z , $B'' \in \Phi(\mathfrak{R})$, and $-(K_{X''} + B'')$ is nef over Z . Moreover, (X'', B'') is lc, as (X'', Γ'') is lc and $B'' \leq \Gamma''$.

By our choice of q , which comes from Theorem 1.8, $K_{X''} + B''$ has a q -complement $K_{X''} + B''^+$ over z with $B''^+ \geq B''$. Thus by 6.1(3) (in the

relative setting), there is a q -complement $K_{X'} + B'^+$ of $K_{X'} + B'$ over z with $B'^+ \geq B'$. Pushing $K_{X'} + B'^+$ down to X gives a q -complement $K_X + B^+$ of $K_X + B$ over z with $B^+ \geq B$ such that (X, B^+) has a non-klt centre mapping to z . Now $B^+ - B \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$ over z , hence $B^+ - B$ is vertical over Z . Thus over z , the divisor $B^+ - B$ is just a multiple of the fibre f^*z . Therefore, $B^+ = B + tf^*z$ over z as (X, B^+) has a non-klt centre mapping to z .

Recall that the coefficient of z in B_Z is $1 - t$. Pick a component S of f^*z , and let b and b^+ be its coefficients in B and B^+ . If m is its coefficient in f^*z , then $b^+ = b + tm$, and hence $t = \frac{b^+ - b}{m}$. Now $b = 1 - \frac{r}{l}$ for some $r \in \mathfrak{R}$ and $l \in \mathbb{N}$, so $t = \frac{s}{m}$ where $s = b^+ - 1 + \frac{r}{l}$. If $b^+ = 1$, then $t = \frac{r}{lm}$ and $\mu_z B_Z \in \Phi(\mathfrak{R})$. If $b^+ < 1$, then as $r \leq 1$ and as qb^+ is integral, we get

$$1 - \frac{1}{l} \leq b = 1 - \frac{r}{l} \leq b^+ \leq 1 - \frac{1}{q},$$

so $l \leq q$. Hence in this case there are finitely many possibilities for s . Therefore, in any case $\mu_z B_Z \in \Phi(\mathfrak{S})$ for some fixed finite set $\mathfrak{S} \subset [0, 1]$ of rational numbers.

Step 4. In this step we show qM_Z is integral. By Step 2, we can assume Z is a curve. By Step 1, $q(K_X + B) \sim 0$ over some non-empty open set $V \subseteq Z$ such that $\text{Supp } B_Z \subseteq Z \setminus V$. Let

$$\Theta = B + \sum_{z \in Z \setminus V} t_z f^*z,$$

where t_z is the lc threshold of f^*z with respect to (X, B) . If Θ_Z is the discriminant part of adjunction for (X, Θ) over Z , then

$$\Theta_Z = B_Z + \sum_{z \in Z \setminus V} t_z z,$$

hence Θ_Z is a reduced divisor. Moreover, by Step 3, $K_X + \Theta$ is a q -complement of $K_X + B$ over each $z \in Z \setminus V$, hence $q(K_X + \Theta) \sim 0/Z$, by Lemma 2.4. Therefore, since

$$\begin{aligned} q(K_X + \Theta) &= q(K_X + B) + q(\Theta - B) \\ &\sim qf^*(K_Z + B_Z + M_Z) + qf^*(\Theta_Z - B_Z) = qf^*(K_Z + \Theta_Z + M_Z), \end{aligned}$$

we deduce $q(K_Z + \Theta_Z + M_Z)$ is Cartier. This implies qM_Z is integral as $K_Z + \Theta_Z$ is integral.

Step 5. In this step we construct a birational model X'' of X' using MMP. From now on we consider the general case of Z , that is, when it is not necessarily a curve. Let $X' \rightarrow X$ be a log resolution of (X, B) so that $X' \dashrightarrow Z'$ is a morphism where $Z' \rightarrow Z$ is a high resolution. Let $U_0 \subseteq U$ be a non-empty open set over which $Z' \rightarrow Z$ is an isomorphism. Let Δ' be the sum of the birational transform of B and the reduced exceptional divisor of $X' \rightarrow X$ but

with all the components mapping outside U_0 removed. We can assume the generic point of any non-klt centre of (X', Δ') maps into U_0 . Run an MMP on $K_{X'} + \Delta'$ over $Z' \times_Z X$ with scaling of some ample divisor. By [5, Th. 1.9], the MMP terminates over $U'_0 \subset Z'$, the inverse image of U_0 . In fact we reach a model X'' such that over U'_0 the pair (X'', Δ'') is a \mathbb{Q} -factorial dlt model of (X, B) . Hence $K_{X''} + \Delta'' \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$ over U'_0 and X'' is of Fano type over U'_0 . Now by [5, Th. 1.4], [18, Th. 1.1], we can run an MMP/ Z' on $K_{X''} + \Delta''$ that terminates with a good minimal model over Z' because the generic point of every non-klt centre of (X'', Δ'') is mapped into U'_0 . Abusing notation, we denote the minimal model again by X'' that is of Fano type over U'_0 .

Step 6. We are now ready to show that $qM_{Z'}$ is nef Cartier where $Z' \rightarrow Z$ is a high resolution. The nefness follows from [Theorem 3.6](#), so we just need to show $qM_{Z'}$ is integral. We will use the construction of the previous step. Let $f'' : X'' \rightarrow Z''/Z'$ be the contraction defined by $K_{X''} + \Delta''$. By construction, on a common resolution W of X and X'' , the pullbacks of $K_X + B$ and $K_{X''} + \Delta''$ are equal over $U''_0 \subset Z''$, the inverse image of U_0 . Let $K_{X''} + B''$ and L'' be the pushdown to X'' of the pullback of $K_X + B$ and L to W , respectively, where L is as in Step 1. Let $P'' = \Delta'' - B''$, which is vertical and $\sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$ over Z'' ; hence it is the pullback of some \mathbb{Q} -divisor $P_{Z''}$ on Z'' . Denote by $\Delta_{Z''}$ the discriminant part of adjunction on Z'' defined for (X'', Δ'') over Z'' . Then $\Delta_{Z''} = B_{Z''} + P_{Z''}$, where $B_{Z''}$ is the discriminant part of adjunction on Z'' defined for (X, B) over Z . Moreover,

$$\begin{aligned} q(K_{X''} + \Delta'') &= q(K_{X''} + B'' + P'') \sim q(L'' + P'') = qf''^*(L_{Z''} + P_{Z''}) \\ &= qf''^*(K_{Z''} + \Delta_{Z''} + M_{Z''}), \end{aligned}$$

where $L_{Z''}$ is the pullback of L_Z in Step 1, and $M_{Z''} = L_{Z''} - (K_{Z''} + B_{Z''})$ is the moduli part of both (X'', Δ'') over Z'' and (X, B) over Z . Now by Steps 2–4, $qM_{Z''}$ is an integral divisor, hence $qM_{Z'}$ is integral as well, which means it is Cartier as Z' is smooth. \square

6.4. *Pulling back complements from the base of a fibration.* In this subsection we consider complements when a suitable fibration is present.

PROPOSITION 6.5. *Assume [Theorem 1.10](#) holds in dimension $\leq d - 1$ and [Theorem 1.8](#) holds in dimension d . Then [Theorem 1.10](#) holds in dimension d for those $(X', B' + M')$ such that there is a contraction $X' \rightarrow V'$ so that $K_{X'} + B' + M' \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0/V'$, $\dim V' > 0$, and M' is not big/ V' .*

Proof. First we give a short summary of the proof. Modifying the setting we can assume $X' \rightarrow V'$ factors through a fibration $f' : X' \rightarrow T'$ such that $M' \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0/T'$. Applying adjunction and [Proposition 6.3](#) we can write

$$q(K_{X'} + B') \sim qf'^*(K_{T'} + B_{T'} + P_{T'})$$

with $B_{T'} \in \Phi(\mathfrak{S})$ and qP_T is nef Cartier, where q, \mathfrak{S} are fixed and T is a resolution of T' . In addition we make sure qM is linearly equivalent to the pullback of some nef Cartier divisor qM_T , and that qM' is linearly equivalent to the pullback of $qM_{T'}$, where $M_{T'}$ is the pushdown of M_T . Next we show $(T', B_{T'} + P_{T'} + M_{T'})$ is generalised lc, and we construct a bounded complement for $K_{T'} + B_{T'} + P_{T'} + M_{T'}$ and pull it back to a complement of $K_{X'} + B' + M'$.

Step 1. In this step we reduce the problem to the situation in which we have a contraction $X' \rightarrow T'/V'$ with $M' \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0/T'$. Replacing $(X', B' + M')$ with a \mathbb{Q} -factorial generalised dlt model as in [Section 2.13\(3\)](#), we can assume X' is \mathbb{Q} -factorial. Since M' is not big/ V' , $X' \rightarrow V'$ is not birational. After running an MMP/ V' on M' and applying [6.1\(2\)](#), we can assume M' is semi-ample/ V' . Note that we can run such MMP as X' is of Fano type. So $X' \rightarrow V'$ factors through a contraction $f': X' \rightarrow T'$ such that $\dim X' > \dim T'$ and $M' \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0/T'$.

Step 2. In this step we consider adjunction over T' . By construction, $K_{X'} + B' \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0/T'$. Thus by [Proposition 6.3](#) (which needs [Theorem 1.8](#) in dimension d) there exist $q \in \mathbb{N}$ and a finite set of rational numbers $\mathfrak{S} \subset [0, 1]$ depending only on d, \mathfrak{A} such that

$$q(K_{X'} + B') \sim qf'^*(K_{T'} + B_{T'} + P_{T'}),$$

where $B_{T'}$ and $P_{T'}$ are the discriminant and moduli divisors of adjunction for fibre spaces applied to (X', B') over T' , and such that $B_{T'} \in \Phi(\mathfrak{S})$ and qP_T is nef Cartier for any high resolution $T \rightarrow T'$. We can assume q is divisible by p .

Step 3. In this step we show that perhaps after replacing X , pM is linearly the pullback of some Cartier divisor pM_T on a resolution T of T' . Pick a sufficiently high log resolution $\psi: T \rightarrow T'$ of $(T', B'_{T'})$ so that the moduli part P_T is nef and it satisfies the pullback property of [Theorem 3.6\(ii\)](#). We consider $(T', B_{T'} + P_{T'})$ as a generalised pair with data $\psi: T \rightarrow T'$ and P_T . Since (X', B') is lc, the coefficients of the discriminant divisor B_T on T are at most 1; hence $(T', B_{T'} + P_{T'})$ is generalised lc. Replace X so that the induced map $f: X \dashrightarrow T$ is a morphism. Since M is nef, $\phi^*M' = M + E$ for some exceptional/ X' and effective \mathbb{Q} -divisor E . Since $M' \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0/T'$, E is vertical/ T' , so there is a non-empty open subset of T' over which $E = 0$ and $M \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$. Since X' is of Fano type, the general fibres of f' are also of Fano type, hence they are rationally connected, which in turn implies the general fibres of f are rationally connected [[16](#)], [[46](#)]. Thus perhaps after replacing X and T and applying [Lemma 2.44](#), $pM \sim pf^*M_T$ for a \mathbb{Q} -divisor M_T on T so that pM_T is nef Cartier.

Step 4. In this step we show that $qM' \sim qf'^*M_{T'}$, where $M_{T'}$ is the push-down of M_T . Since E is vertical and $\sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$ over T , $E = f^*E_T$ for some effective

\mathbb{Q} -divisor E_T . Moreover, since E is exceptional/ X' , we deduce E_T is exceptional over T' ; otherwise E_T has a component D whose pushdown D' on T' is not zero; but then there is some prime divisor C' on X' mapping onto D' , and since $E = f^*E_T$, we get a component C of E mapping onto C' contradicting the fact that E is exceptional over X' . Therefore, $M_{T'} := \psi_*M_T$ is \mathbb{Q} -Cartier as $M_T + E_T \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0/T'$. By construction, $q(P_T + M_T)$ is nef Cartier. Moreover,

$$q\phi^*M' = q(M + E) \sim qf^*(M_T + E_T) = qf^*\psi^*M_{T'} = q\phi^*f'^*M_{T'},$$

which implies $qM' \sim qf'^*M_{T'}$.

Step 5. Now we consider $(T', B_{T'} + P_{T'} + M_{T'})$ as a generalised pair with data $\psi: T \rightarrow T'$ and $P_T + M_T$. We show it is generalised lc. We can assume $(T, B_T + E_T)$ is log smooth, where as before B_T is the discriminant divisor on T defined for (X, B) over T' . By construction,

$$K_T + B_T + E_T + P_T + M_T = \psi^*(K_{T'} + B_{T'} + P_{T'} + M_{T'}).$$

So it is enough to show $(T, B_T + E_T)$ is sub-lc, which in turn is equivalent to saying that every coefficient of $B_T + E_T$ is ≤ 1 . Let $K_X + B$ be the pullback of $K_{X'} + B'$. Let D be a prime divisor on T . By definition of the discriminant divisor, $\mu_D B_T = 1 - t_D$, where t_D is the largest number so that $(X, B + t_D f^*D)$ is sub-lc over the generic point of D . Since $(X', B' + M')$ is generalised lc, $(X, B + E)$ is sub-lc, and since $E = f^*E_T$, we have $\mu_D E_T \leq t_D$, which implies $\mu_D B_T + \mu_D E_T \leq 1$ as required.

Step 6. To summarise we have proved that $(T', B_{T'} + P_{T'} + M_{T'})$ is generalised lc, $B_{T'} \in \Phi(\mathfrak{S})$, $q(P_T + M_T)$ is Cartier, and

$$q(K_{X'} + B' + M') \sim qf'^*(K_{T'} + B_{T'} + P_{T'} + M_{T'})$$

is anti-nef. Moreover, T' is of Fano type as X' is of Fano type, by [Lemma 2.12](#).

We will construct a complement on T' and pull it back to X' . Since we are assuming [Theorem 1.10](#) in dimension $\leq d - 1$, $K_{T'} + B_{T'} + P_{T'} + M_{T'}$ has an n -complement $K_{T'} + B_{T'}^+ + P_{T'} + M_{T'}$ for some n divisible by q and depending only on $\dim T', q, \mathfrak{S}$ such that $G_{T'} := B_{T'}^+ - B_{T'} \geq 0$. So n depends only on d, p, \mathfrak{R} . Denote the pullback of $G_{T'}$ to T, X, X' by G_T, G, G' , respectively. Let $B'^+ = B' + G'$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} n(K_{X'} + B'^+ + M') &= n(K_{X'} + B' + M' + G') \\ &\sim n f'^*(K_{T'} + B_{T'} + P_{T'} + M_{T'} + G_{T'}) \\ &= n f'^*(K_{T'} + B_{T'}^+ + P_{T'} + M_{T'}) \sim 0. \end{aligned}$$

Thus by [6.1\(1\)](#), $K_{X'} + B'^+ + M'$ is an n -complement of $K_{X'} + B' + M'$ if we show $(X', B'^+ + M')$ is generalised lc.

Step 7. In this final step we show that indeed $(X', B'^+ + M')$ is generalised lc. The pair is clearly generalised lc over the generic point of T' because by construction, $B'^+ = B'$ over the generic point of T' . Let C be a prime divisor on some birational model of X' . We want to show that $a(C, X', B'^+ + M') \geq 0$. This is true if C is not vertical over T' , by the previous sentence. Assume then that C is vertical over T' . Replacing X, T we can assume C is a divisor on X and that its image on T is a divisor, say D . The pullback of $K_{X'} + B'^+ + M'$ to X is $K_X + B + E + G + M$. It is enough to show $\mu_C(B + E + G) \leq 1$. Since $(T', B_{T'}^+ + P_{T'} + M_{T'})$ is generalised lc, and since

$$\begin{aligned} K_T + B_T + E_T + G_T + P_T + M_T &= K_T + B_T + P_T + G_T + E_T + M_T \\ &= \psi^*(K_{T'} + B_{T'} + P_{T'} + G_{T'} + M_{T'}) \\ &= \psi^*(K_{T'} + B_{T'}^+ + P_{T'} + M_{T'}), \end{aligned}$$

we have $\mu_D(B_T + E_T + G_T) \leq 1$.

Letting t_D be as in Step 5 we get $\mu_D(E_T + G_T) \leq t_D$, which implies $(X, B + E + G)$ is sub-lc over the generic point of D . Thus, $\mu_C(B + E + G) \leq 1$ as required. \square

6.6. *Lifting complements from a non-klt centre.* Until the end of this subsection we essentially give an inductive treatment of [Theorem 1.10](#) when there are non-klt centres around from which we can lift complements. First we consider a key inductive statement.

PROPOSITION 6.7. *Assume [Theorem 1.10](#) holds in dimension $d - 1$. Then [Theorem 1.10](#) holds in dimension d for those $(X', B' + M')$ such that*

- $B' \in \mathfrak{R}$;
- $(X', \Gamma' + \alpha M')$ is \mathbb{Q} -factorial generalised plt for some Γ' and $\alpha \in (0, 1)$;
- $-(K_{X'} + \Gamma' + \alpha M')$ is ample; and
- $S' = \lfloor \Gamma' \rfloor$ is irreducible and it is a component of $\lfloor B' \rfloor$.

Proof. We say a few words before going into the proof. The idea is to construct a complement on S' and then lift it to X' using the Kawamata-Viehweg vanishing theorem. Applying induction gives the required complement for $(K_{X'} + B' + M')|_{S'}$. However, we face technical issues if we try to lift the complement directly to X' . Instead we assume $X \rightarrow X'$ is a resolution and extend information from S , the birational transform of S' , to X and then push down to X' . This makes the notation a bit more complicated than desired. In the end we get something like $K_{X'} + B'^+ + M'$, which is the complement we need except that we need to further argue that the singularities of $(X', B'^+ + M')$ are good away from S' by using the connectedness principle.

Step 1. In this step we consider adjunction and complements on S' . We can assume the given map $\phi: X \rightarrow X'$ is a log resolution of $(X', B' + \Gamma')$ and

that the induced map $\psi: S \dashrightarrow S'$ is a morphism, where S is the birational transform of S' . Moreover, we can assume pM is Cartier. Then, by 3.1(2), we have the generalised adjunction

$$K_{S'} + B_{S'} + M_{S'} \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} (K_{X'} + B' + M')|_{S'}$$

such that pM_S is Cartier and

$$p(K_{S'} + B_{S'} + M_{S'}) \sim p(K_{X'} + B' + M')|_{S'}.$$

By Lemma 3.3, $B_{S'} \in \Phi(\mathfrak{S})$ for some finite set of rational numbers $\mathfrak{S} \subset [0, 1]$ that only depends on p, \mathfrak{R} . Restricting $K_{X'} + \Gamma' + \alpha M'$ to S' shows that S' is of Fano type, by 2.13(6). Thus by Theorem 1.10 in dimension $d-1$, there is $n \in \mathbb{N}$ divisible by p that depends only on $d-1, p, \mathfrak{S}$ such that $K_{S'} + B_{S'} + M_{S'}$ has an n -complement $K_{S'} + B_{S'}^+ + M_{S'}$ with $B_{S'}^+ \geq B_{S'}$. Then n depends only on d, p, \mathfrak{R} , and replacing it with $nI(\mathfrak{R})$ we can assume it is divisible by $I(\mathfrak{R})$. In particular, nB' is integral as $B' \in \mathfrak{R}$. We will show there is an n -complement $K_{X'} + B'^+ + M'$ of $K_{X'} + B' + M'$ with $B'^+ \geq B'$.

Step 2. In this step we introduce basic notation. Write

$$N := -(K_X + B + M) := -\phi^*(K_{X'} + B' + M'),$$

and let $T = \lfloor B^{\geq 0} \rfloor$ and $\Delta = B - T$. Define

$$L := -nK_X - nT - \lfloor (n+1)\Delta \rfloor - nM,$$

which is an integral divisor. Note that

$$L = n\Delta - \lfloor (n+1)\Delta \rfloor + nN.$$

Now write

$$K_X + \Gamma + \alpha M = \phi^*(K_{X'} + \Gamma' + \alpha M').$$

Replacing Γ' with $(1-a)\Gamma' + aB'$ and replacing αM with $((1-a)\alpha + a)M$ for some $a \in (0, 1)$ sufficiently close to 1, we can assume α is sufficiently close to 1 and $B - \Gamma$ has sufficiently small (positive or negative) coefficients.

Step 3. In this step we define a divisor P and study its properties. Let P be the unique integral divisor so that

$$\Lambda := \Gamma + n\Delta - \lfloor (n+1)\Delta \rfloor + P$$

is a boundary, (X, Λ) is plt, and $\lfloor \Lambda \rfloor = S$. (In particular, we are assuming $\Lambda \geq 0$.) More precisely, we let $\mu_S P = 0$, and for each prime divisor $D \neq S$, we let

$$\mu_D P = -\mu_D \lfloor \Gamma + n\Delta - \lfloor (n+1)\Delta \rfloor \rfloor,$$

which satisfies

$$\mu_D P = -\mu_D \lfloor \Gamma - \Delta + \langle (n+1)\Delta \rangle \rfloor,$$

where $\langle (n+1)\Delta \rangle$ is the fractional part of $(n+1)\Delta$. This implies $0 \leq \mu_D P \leq 1$ for any prime divisor D . Indeed, we can assume $D \neq S$; if D is a component of T , then D is not a component of Δ but $\mu_D \Gamma \in (0, 1)$, hence $\mu_D P = 0$; if D

is not a component of T , then $\mu_D(\Gamma - \Delta) = \mu_D(\Gamma - B)$ is sufficiently small, hence $0 \leq \mu_D P \leq 1$.

We show P is exceptional/ X' . Assume D is a component of P that is not exceptional/ X' . Then $D \neq S$, and since nB' is integral, $\mu_D n\Delta$ is integral, hence $\mu_D \lfloor (n+1)\Delta \rfloor = \mu_D n\Delta$ which implies $\mu_D P = -\mu_D \lfloor \Gamma \rfloor = 0$, a contradiction.

Step 4. In this step we use Kawamata-Viehweg vanishing to lift sections from S to X . Let

$$A' = -(K_{X'} + \Gamma' + \alpha M'),$$

and let $A = \phi^* A'$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} L + P &= n\Delta - \lfloor (n+1)\Delta \rfloor + nN + P \\ &= K_X + \Gamma + \alpha M + A + n\Delta - \lfloor (n+1)\Delta \rfloor + nN + P \\ &= K_X + \Lambda + A + \alpha M + nN. \end{aligned}$$

Since $A + \alpha M + nN$ is nef and big and $(X, \Lambda - S)$ is klt, $h^1(L + P - S) = 0$ by the Kawamata-Viehweg vanishing theorem, and hence

$$H^0(L + P) \rightarrow H^0((L + P)|_S)$$

is surjective.

Step 5. In this step we define several divisors. Let $R_{S'} := B_{S'}^+ - B_{S'}$, which satisfies

$$-n(K_{S'} + B_{S'} + M_{S'}) \sim nR_{S'} \geq 0.$$

Letting R_S be the pullback of $R_{S'}$, we get

$$-n(K_S + B_S + M_S) := -n\psi^*(K_{S'} + B_{S'} + M_{S'}) \sim nR_S.$$

Then

$$nN|_S = -n(K_X + B + M)|_S \sim -n(K_S + B_S + M_S) \sim nR_S \geq 0,$$

where the first linear equivalence follows from Step 1 as n is divisible by p .

By construction,

$$\begin{aligned} (L + P)|_S &= (n\Delta - \lfloor (n+1)\Delta \rfloor + nN + P)|_S \\ &\sim G_S := nR_S + n\Delta_S - \lfloor (n+1)\Delta_S \rfloor + P_S, \end{aligned}$$

where $\Delta_S = \Delta|_S$ and $P_S = P|_S$.

Step 6. In this step we show that $G_S \geq 0$ and that it lifts to some effective divisor G on X . Assume C is a component of G_S with negative coefficient. Then there is a component D of $n\Delta - \lfloor (n+1)\Delta \rfloor$ with negative coefficient such that C is a component of $D|_S$. But

$$\mu_C(n\Delta_S - \lfloor (n+1)\Delta_S \rfloor) = \mu_C(-\Delta_S + \langle (n+1)\Delta_S \rangle) \geq -\mu_C\Delta_S = -\mu_D\Delta > -1,$$

which gives $\mu_C G_S > -1$. This in turn implies $\mu_C G_S \geq 0$ because G_S is integral, a contradiction. Therefore $G_S \geq 0$, and by Step 4, $L + P \sim G$ for some effective divisor G whose support does not contain S and $G|_S = G_S$.

Step 7. In this step we introduce B'^+ . By the previous step and the fact that P is exceptional/ X' , we have

$$-nK_{X'} - nT' - \lfloor (n+1)\Delta' \rfloor - nM' = L' = L' + P' \sim G' \geq 0,$$

where L' is the pushdown of L , etc. Since nB' is integral, $\lfloor (n+1)\Delta' \rfloor = n\Delta'$, so

$$-n(K_{X'} + B' + M') = -nK_{X'} - nT' - n\Delta' - nM' = L' \sim nR' := G' \geq 0.$$

Let $B'^+ = B' + R'$. Then $n(K_{X'} + B'^+ + M') \sim 0$.

Step 8. It is enough to show that $(X', B'^+ + M')$ is generalised lc because then $K_{X'} + B'^+ + M'$ is an n -complement of $K_{X'} + B' + M'$, by 6.1(1). First we want to show $R'|_{S'} = R_{S'}$. Since

$$nR := G - P + \lfloor (n+1)\Delta \rfloor - n\Delta \sim L + \lfloor (n+1)\Delta \rfloor - n\Delta = nN \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0/X'$$

and since $\lfloor (n+1)\Delta' \rfloor - n\Delta' = 0$ as $n\Delta'$ is integral, we get that $\phi_* nR = G' = nR'$ and that R is the pullback of R' . Now

$$\begin{aligned} nR_S &= G_S - P_S + \lfloor (n+1)\Delta_S \rfloor - n\Delta_S \\ &= (G - P + \lfloor (n+1)\Delta \rfloor - n\Delta)|_S = nR|_S, \end{aligned}$$

which means $R_S = R|_S$, hence $R_{S'} = R'|_{S'}$ as required.

The previous paragraph implies

$$n(K_{S'} + B_{S'}^+ + M_{S'}) \sim n(K_{X'} + B'^+ + M')|_{S'},$$

which gives the generalised adjunction

$$K_{S'} + B_{S'}^+ + M_{S'} \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} (K_{X'} + B'^+ + M')|_{S'}.$$

By generalised inversion of adjunction (Lemma 3.2), $(X', B'^+ + M')$ is generalised lc near S' . Let

$$\Omega' := aB'^+ + (1-a)\Gamma' \text{ and } F = (a + (1-a)\alpha)M$$

for some $a \in (0, 1)$ close to 1. If $(X', B'^+ + M')$ is not generalised lc away from S' , then $(X', \Omega' + F')$ is also not generalised lc away from S' . But then

$$-(K_{X'} + \Omega' + F') = -a(K_{X'} + B'^+ + M') - (1-a)(K_{X'} + \Gamma' + \alpha M')$$

is ample and the generalised non-klt locus of $(X', \Omega' + F')$ has at least two disjoint components, one of which is S' . This contradicts the connectedness principle (Lemma 2.14). Thus $(X', B'^+ + M')$ is generalised lc. \square

PROPOSITION 6.8. *Assume Theorem 1.10 holds in dimension $\leq d-1$ and Theorem 1.8 holds in dimension d . Then Theorem 1.10 holds in dimension d for those $(X', B' + M')$ such that*

- $B' \in \mathfrak{R}$;
- $(X', B' + M')$ is not generalised klt; and
- either $K_{X'} + B' + M' \not\sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$ or $M' \not\sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$.

Proof. We say a few words before going into the proof. We reduce to the case when X' is \mathbb{Q} -factorial and (X', B') is non-klt, find a contraction $X' \rightarrow Z'$, and reduce to the case when M' is nef and big over Z' via 6.5. Next we find $\alpha \in (0, 1)$ such that $-(K_{X'} + B' + \alpha M') \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} A' + G'$ is nef and big, A' is ample, and $G' \geq 0$. If $\text{Supp } G'$ does not contains non-klt centres of $(X', B' + \alpha M')$, then we can easily find a boundary Γ' so that we can apply 6.7. Otherwise we face some technicalities, but we modify our pair so that in the end we can apply 6.7 again.

Step 1. Here we reduce the problem to the case when X' is \mathbb{Q} -factorial and (X', B') is non-klt, find a contraction $X' \rightarrow Z'$, and reduce to the case when M' is nef and big over Z' . Taking a \mathbb{Q} -factorial generalised dlt model of $(X', B' + M')$ we can assume X' is \mathbb{Q} -factorial and that (X', B') is not klt. Let $X' \rightarrow Z'$ be the contraction defined by $-(K_{X'} + B' + M')$. Running an MMP on M' over Z' and replacing X' with the resulting model we can assume M' is nef/ Z' . Note that since the MMP is an MMP on $-(K_{X'} + B')$, the non-klt property of (X', B') is preserved. Moreover, if $M' \not\sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$, then this is also preserved by the MMP because $M' \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$ implies $M \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$ as M is nef.

Let $X' \rightarrow V'/Z'$ be the contraction defined by M' . If $\dim Z' > 0$, then $\dim V' > 0$. If $\dim Z' = 0$, then $K_{X'} + B' + M' \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$. Hence $M' \not\sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$, so again $\dim V' > 0$. In particular, if M' is not big over Z' , then we can apply Proposition 6.5. From now on we can assume M' is nef and big over Z' .

Step 2. In this step we introduce numbers α, β . Since M' is nef and big over Z' ,

$$-(K_{X'} + B' + \alpha M') = -(K_{X'} + B' + M') + (1 - \alpha)M'$$

is globally nef and big for some rational number $\alpha < 1$ close to 1, which will be fixed throughout the proof. The contraction defined by $-(K_{X'} + B' + \alpha M')$ is nothing but $X' \rightarrow V'$, which is birational. After running an MMP on B' over V' we can assume B' is nef over V' . Hence

$$-(K_{X'} + \beta B' + \alpha M') = -(K_{X'} + B' + \alpha M') + (1 - \beta)B'$$

is also globally nef and big for any rational number $\beta \in (\alpha, 1)$ sufficiently close 1. Note that since the latter MMP is $K_{X'} + B'$ -trivial, the non-klt property of (X', B') is again preserved.

Step 3. In this step we modify X', B', M' and look at generalised non-klt centres of $(X', B' + \alpha M')$. Since X' is of Fano type and \mathbb{Q} -factorial, $(X', 0)$ is klt. Thus since $(X', B' + M')$ is generalised lc, $(X', \beta B' + \alpha M')$ is generalised klt. Let (X'', B'') be a \mathbb{Q} -factorial dlt model of (X', B') , and let M'' be the pullback of M' . Note that M'' is the pushdown of M , assuming $X \dashrightarrow X''$ is a morphism, otherwise (X', B', M') would not be generalised lc. Writing the pullback of $K_{X'} + \beta B'$ as $K_{X''} + \tilde{B}''$, perhaps after increasing β , we can assume the coefficients of $B'' - \tilde{B}''$ are sufficiently small. Replacing X', B', M' with X'', B'', M'' and renaming \tilde{B}'' to \tilde{B}' , we have that $(X', \tilde{B}' + \alpha M')$ is generalised klt, $-(K_{X'} + \tilde{B}' + \alpha M')$ is nef and big, and the coefficients of $B' - \tilde{B}'$ are sufficiently small. Moreover, every generalised non-klt centre of $(X', B' + \alpha M')$ is a non-klt centre of (X', B') . If D is a prime divisor on birational models of X' such that $a(D, X', B' + \alpha M') = 0$, then

$$0 = a(D, X', B' + \alpha M') = \alpha a(D, X', B' + M') + (1 - \alpha)a(D, X', B'),$$

hence $a(D, X', B') = 0$.

Step 4. In this step, under some assumptions, we introduce a boundary Γ' and apply [Proposition 6.7](#). Write

$$-(K_{X'} + B' + \alpha M') \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} A' + G',$$

where $A', G' \geq 0$ are \mathbb{Q} -divisors and A' is ample. First assume that $\text{Supp } G'$ does not contain any generalised non-klt centre of $(X', B' + \alpha M')$. Then, for some small $\delta > 0$,

$$-(K_{X'} + B' + \alpha M' + \delta G') \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} (1 - \delta) \left(\frac{\delta}{1 - \delta} A' + A' + G' \right)$$

is ample and $(X', B' + \delta G' + \alpha M')$ is a generalised lc pair whose generalised non-klt locus is equal to the generalised non-klt locus of $(X', B' + \alpha M')$, which is in turn equal to the non-klt locus of (X', B') . In particular, $(X', B' + \delta G')$ is dlt as (X', B') is dlt.

Pick a component S' of $[B']$, and let $\Gamma' = S' + a(B' - S' + \delta G')$ for some $a < 1$ close to 1. Then $(X', \Gamma' + \alpha M')$ is generalised plt, $[\Gamma'] = S'$, and $-(K_{X'} + \Gamma' + \alpha M')$ is ample. Now apply [Proposition 6.7](#). Thus from now on we assume that $\text{Supp } G'$ contains some generalised non-klt centre of $(X', B' + \alpha M')$.

Step 5. In this step we define a boundary Ω' and study some of its properties. Let t be the generalised lc threshold of $G' + B' - \tilde{B}'$ with respect to

$(X', \tilde{B}' + \alpha M')$, and let

$$\Omega' := \tilde{B}' + t(G' + B' - \tilde{B}').$$

As $(X', \tilde{B}' + \alpha M')$ is generalised klt, $t > 0$. We can assume that the given morphism $\phi: X \rightarrow X'$ is a log resolution of $(X', B' + G')$. Write

$$K_X + B_\alpha + \alpha M = \phi^*(K_{X'} + B' + \alpha M')$$

and

$$K_X + \tilde{B}_\alpha + \alpha M = \phi^*(K_{X'} + \tilde{B}' + \alpha M')$$

from which we get $B_\alpha - \tilde{B}_\alpha = \phi^*(B' - \tilde{B}')$. Perhaps after replacing \tilde{B}' with $b\tilde{B}' + (1-b)B'$ for some small $b > 0$, we can assume the coefficients of $B_\alpha - \tilde{B}_\alpha$ are sufficiently small.

Let $G = \phi^*G'$. Since $\text{Supp } G'$ contains some generalised non-klt centre of $(X', B' + \alpha M')$, we can assume G and $[B_\alpha]^{\geq 0}$ have a common component, say T . Now

$$\begin{aligned} K_X + \tilde{B}_\alpha + t(G + B_\alpha - \tilde{B}_\alpha) + \alpha M &= \phi^*(K_{X'} + \tilde{B}' + \alpha M') + t\phi^*(G' + B' - \tilde{B}') \\ &= \phi^*(K_{X'} + \Omega' + \alpha M'). \end{aligned}$$

Since $\mu_T \tilde{B}_\alpha$ is sufficiently close to $\mu_T B_\alpha = 1$, we deduce t is sufficiently small. Moreover, letting

$$\Omega = \tilde{B}_\alpha + t(G + B_\alpha - \tilde{B}_\alpha),$$

we have

$$\Omega = (1-t)\tilde{B}_\alpha + tB_\alpha + tG \leq B_\alpha + tG$$

and

$$[\Omega]^{\geq 0} \leq [B_\alpha + tG]^{\geq 0} = [B_\alpha]^{\geq 0}.$$

Step 6. In this step we show that $-(K_{X'} + \Omega' + \alpha M')$ is ample. By construction,

$$-(K_{X'} + \tilde{B}' + \alpha M') = -(K_{X'} + B' + \alpha M') + B' - \tilde{B}' \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} A' + G' + B' - \tilde{B}'$$

is nef and big. Thus

$$\begin{aligned} -(K_{X'} + \Omega' + \alpha M') &= -(K_{X'} + \tilde{B}' + t(G' + B' - \tilde{B}') + \alpha M') \\ &= -(K_{X'} + \tilde{B}' + \alpha M') - t(G' + B' - \tilde{B}') \\ &\sim_{\mathbb{Q}} A' + G' + B' - \tilde{B}' - t(G' + B' - \tilde{B}') \\ &= A' + (1-t)G' + (1-t)(B' - \tilde{B}') \\ &= (1-t) \left(\frac{t}{1-t} A' + A' + G' + B' - \tilde{B}' \right), \end{aligned}$$

which is ample.

Step 7. In this step we settle the proposition in the case $[\Omega'] \neq 0$. Assume $[\Omega'] \neq 0$ and pick a component S' of $[\Omega']$. By Step 5, $[\Omega'] \leq [B']$, hence S' is a component of $[B']$. We then define Γ' similar to Step 4 by perturbing the coefficients of Ω' , say by letting $\Gamma' = S' + a(\Omega' - S')$ for some $a < 1$ close to 1, so that $[\Gamma'] = S'$, $(X', \Gamma' + \alpha M')$ is generalised plt, and $-(K_{X'} + \Gamma' + \alpha M')$ is ample. Then we apply [Proposition 6.7](#). We can then assume $[\Omega'] = 0$.

Step 8. In this step we construct a birational model X'' . Let Ω° be the sum of the birational transform of Ω' and the reduced exceptional divisor of $X \rightarrow X'$. So $\Omega^\circ - \Omega$ is effective and exceptional/ X' . Running an MMP/ X' on $K_X + \Omega^\circ + \alpha M$ contracts all the components of $\Omega^\circ - \Omega$ as

$$K_X + \Omega^\circ + \alpha M = K_X + \Omega + \alpha M + \Omega^\circ - \Omega \equiv \Omega^\circ - \Omega / X'.$$

Hence we reach a model X''/X' such that if Ω'' and M'' are the pushdowns of Ω° and M , then $(X'', \Omega'' + \alpha M'')$ is a \mathbb{Q} -factorial generalised dlt model of $(X', \Omega' + \alpha M')$. The exceptional prime divisors of $X'' \rightarrow X'$ all have coefficient 1 in Ω'' . Moreover, any prime exceptional divisor D of $X \rightarrow X'$ not contracted over X'' is a component of $[\Omega] \geq 0$, hence a component of $[B_\alpha] \geq 0$, by Step 5. Thus if B'' is the pushdown of B_α , then $K_{X''} + B'' + \alpha M''$ is the pullback of $K_{X'} + B' + \alpha M'$ to X'' , and B'' is the sum of the birational transform of B' and the reduced exceptional divisor of $X'' \rightarrow X'$. Since $(X', B' + M')$ is generalised lc, M'' is the pullback of M' and $K_{X''} + B'' + M''$ is the pullback of $K_{X'} + B' + M'$.

Step 9. In this final step we finish the proof of the proposition again by applying [6.7](#). Let $\tilde{\Delta}''$ be the sum of the birational transform of \tilde{B}' and the reduced exceptional divisor of $X'' \rightarrow X'$. Note that $\tilde{\Delta}'' \leq \Omega''$ as $\tilde{B}' \leq \Omega'$; hence $(X'', \tilde{\Delta}'' + \alpha M'')$ is generalised dlt. Run an MMP/ X' on $K_{X''} + \tilde{\Delta}'' + \alpha M''$. The MMP ends with X' because X' is \mathbb{Q} -factorial and because the generalised klt property of $(X', \tilde{B}' + \alpha M')$ ensures that

$$K_{X''} + \tilde{\Delta}'' + \alpha M'' \equiv Q'' / X',$$

where Q'' is effective whose support is the reduced exceptional divisor of $X'' \rightarrow X'$. The last step of the MMP is a divisorial contraction that contracts a component S'' of $[\Omega'']$. Abuse notation and replace $X'' \rightarrow X'$ with that last contraction.

By construction, $(X'', \tilde{\Delta}'' + \alpha M'')$ is generalised plt and $-(K_{X''} + \tilde{\Delta}'' + \alpha M'')$ is ample over X' . Defining

$$\Gamma'' = a\tilde{\Delta}'' + (1 - a)\Omega''$$

for a sufficiently small $a > 0$ we can check that $(X'', \Gamma'' + \alpha M'')$ is generalised plt, $S'' = [\Gamma'']$, and $-(K_{X''} + \Gamma'' + \alpha M'')$ is globally ample because

$$-(K_{X''} + \Gamma'' + \alpha M'') = -a(K_{X''} + \tilde{\Delta}'' + \alpha M'') - (1 - a)(K_{X''} + \Omega'' + \alpha M'')$$

and because $-(K_{X''} + \Omega'' + \alpha M'')$ is the pullback of the ample divisor $-(K_{X'} + \Omega' + \alpha M')$. Now apply [Proposition 6.7](#) to $K_{X''} + B'' + M''$. \square

LEMMA 6.9. *Assume [Theorem 1.10](#) holds in dimension $\leq d - 1$ and [Theorem 1.8](#) holds in dimension d . Then [Theorem 1.10](#) holds in dimension d for those $(X', B' + M')$ such that*

- $B' \in \mathfrak{R}$, and
- $(X', B' + M')$ is strongly non-exceptional.

Proof. By definition of strongly non-exceptional pairs, there is $P' \geq 0$ such that $K_{X'} + B' + M' + P' \sim_{\mathbb{R}} 0$ and $(X', B' + P' + M')$ is not generalised lc. In particular, $P' \neq 0$. By [Lemma 2.16](#), we can replace P' so that is a \mathbb{Q} -divisor and that $\sim_{\mathbb{R}}$ becomes $\sim_{\mathbb{Q}}$.

Let t be the generalised lc threshold of P' with respect to $(X', B' + M')$. Then $t < 1$. Let $\Omega' = B' + tP'$, and let $(X'', \Omega'' + M'')$ be a \mathbb{Q} -factorial generalised dlt model of $(X', \Omega' + M')$. There is a boundary Θ'' such that $B'^{\sim} \leq \Theta'' \leq \Omega''$, $[\Theta''] \neq 0$, and $\Theta'' \in \mathfrak{R}$, where B'^{\sim} is the birational transform of B' . (Adding 1 to \mathfrak{R} we are assuming $1 \in \mathfrak{R}$.) Let π denote $X'' \rightarrow X'$, and let P'' be the pullback of P' . Then X'' is of Fano type, and

$$\begin{aligned} -(K_{X''} + \Theta'' + M'') &= -(K_{X''} + \Omega'' + M'') + \Omega'' - \Theta'' \\ &= -\pi^*(K_{X'} + \Omega' + M') + \Omega'' - \Theta'' \\ &= -\pi^*(K_{X'} + B' + tP' + M') + \Omega'' - \Theta'' \\ &\sim_{\mathbb{Q}} \pi^*(1 - t)P' + \Omega'' - \Theta'' = (1 - t)P'' + \Omega'' - \Theta'', \end{aligned}$$

where $(1 - t)P'' + \Omega'' - \Theta''$ is effective.

Run an MMP on $-(K_{X''} + \Theta'' + M'')$ and let X''' be the resulting model. By the previous paragraph, the MMP ends with a minimal model; that is, $-(K_{X'''} + \Theta''' + M''')$ is nef. Moreover, since $P'' \geq 0$ is nef and non-zero, its pushdown $P''' \neq 0$, and hence

$$-(K_{X'''} + \Theta''' + M''') \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} (1 - t)P''' + \Omega''' - \Theta''' \not\sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0.$$

In addition, since P'' is semi-ample, there is $Q'' \geq 0$ such that

$$K_{X''} + \Omega'' + Q'' + M'' \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$$

and $(X'', \Omega'' + Q'' + M'')$ is generalised lc. Therefore, $(X''', \Theta''' + M''')$ is generalised lc, however, it is not generalised klt as $(X'', \Theta'' + M'')$ is not generalised klt.

By [6.1\(3\)](#), if $K_{X'''} + \Theta''' + M'''$ has an n -complement $K_{X'''} + \Theta'''^+ + M'''$ with $\Theta'''^+ \geq \Theta'''$, then $K_{X''} + \Theta'' + M''$ has an n -complement $K_{X''} + \Theta''^+ + M''$ with $\Theta''^+ \geq \Theta''$, which in turn gives an n -complement $K_{X'} + B'^+ + M'$ of $K_{X'} + B' + M'$ with $B'^+ \geq B'$. Now apply [Proposition 6.8](#) to $K_{X'''} + \Theta''' + M'''$. \square

LEMMA 6.10. *Let $d \in \mathbb{N}$, and assume [Theorem 1.10](#) holds in dimension $\leq d-1$ and [Theorem 1.8](#) holds in dimension d . Let $\mathfrak{R} \subset [0, 1]$ be a finite set of rational numbers. Then there is a number $n \in \mathbb{N}$ depending only on d, \mathfrak{R} such that if (X', B') is a projective lc pair of dimension d with $K_{X'} + B' \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$ and $B' \in \mathfrak{R}$, and X' is of Fano type, then $n(K_{X'} + B') \sim 0$.*

Proof. We say a few words before going into the proof. First we reduce the problem to the case when X' is an ϵ -lc Fano variety for some fixed $\epsilon > 0$. Next we find a bounded $n \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $|-nK_{X'}|$ defines a birational map. The rest of the proof is essentially a careful analysis of the linear system $|-nK_{X'}|$.

Step 1. In this step we reduce the problem to the case when X' is an ϵ -lc Fano variety for some fixed $\epsilon > 0$. Taking a small \mathbb{Q} -factorialisation we can assume X' is \mathbb{Q} -factorial. By [Lemma 2.48](#), there is $\epsilon \in (0, 1)$ depending only on d, \mathfrak{R} such that if D is any prime divisor on birational models of X' with $a(D, X', 0) < \epsilon$, then $a(D, X', B') = 0$. Let $X'' \rightarrow X'$ be the birational contraction that extracts exactly those D with $a(D, X', 0) < \epsilon$ if there is any. Otherwise let $X'' \rightarrow X'$ be the identity. Then X'' is of Fano type and ϵ -lc. Moreover, if $K_{X''} + B''$ is the pullback of $K_{X'} + B'$, then all the exceptional divisors of $X'' \rightarrow X'$ appear in B'' with coefficient 1. Replacing (X', B') with (X'', B'') we can assume X' is ϵ -lc. After running an MMP on $K_{X'}$ we can assume we have a $K_{X'}$ -negative Mori fibre structure $X' \rightarrow T'$.

If $\dim T' > 0$, then applying [Proposition 6.5](#), there is an n -complement $K_{X'} + B'^+$ of $K_{X'} + B'$ for some bounded $n \in \mathbb{N}$ with $B'^+ \geq B'$. Since $K_{X'} + B' \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$, we get $B'^+ = B'$; hence $n(K_{X'} + B') \sim 0$. Thus we can assume $\dim T' = 0$, so X' is an ϵ -lc Fano variety.

Step 2. In this step we introduce divisors A', R' with

$$n \left(K_{X'} + \frac{1}{n} R' + \frac{1}{n} A' \right) \sim 0$$

and $(X', \frac{1}{n} R' + \frac{1}{n} A')$ being lc. By [Lemma 6.9](#), there is a number n depending only on d such that if Y' is any strongly non-exceptional Fano variety of dimension d with klt singularities, then $K_{Y'}$ has an n -complement. We can assume $pI(\mathfrak{R})|n$. On the other hand, by [Proposition 4.9](#), there is $m \in \mathbb{N}$ depending only on d, ϵ such that $|-mK_{X'}|$ defines a birational map. Replacing n once more we can assume $m|n$. So $|-nK_{X'}|$ also defines a birational map.

By [Lemma 2.6](#), there is a log resolution $\phi: X \rightarrow X'$ of (X', B') such that $\phi^*(-nK_{X'}) \sim A + R$, where A is the movable part, $|A|$ is base point free, and R is the fixed part. We can assume A is general in $|A|$. Then

$$n \left(K_{X'} + \frac{1}{n} R' + \frac{1}{n} A' \right) \sim 0,$$

where R', A' are the pushdowns of R, A . We claim $(X', \frac{1}{n} R' + \frac{1}{n} A')$ is lc. If not, then $(X', 0)$ is strongly non-exceptional. Hence by our choice of n we have an

n -complement $K_{X'} + C'^+$ of $K_{X'}$. Since $nC'^+ \in |-nK_{X'}|$ and (X', C'^+) is lc, we deduce $(X', \frac{1}{n}R' + \frac{1}{n}A')$ is also lc because $A' + R' \in |-nK_{X'}|$ is a general member. This is a contradiction.

Step 3. In this step we introduce $(X', \Delta' + N')$. Let

$$\Delta' = \frac{1}{2}B' + \frac{1}{2n}R' \quad \text{and} \quad N' = \frac{1}{2n}A'.$$

Since

$$\begin{aligned} 2n(K_{X'} + \Delta' + N') &= 2n\left(K_{X'} + \frac{1}{2}B' + \frac{1}{2n}R' + \frac{1}{2n}A'\right) \\ &= n(K_{X'} + B') + nK_{X'} + R' + A' \sim n(K_{X'} + B'), \end{aligned}$$

it is enough to find a bounded n so that

$$2n(K_{X'} + \Delta' + N') \sim 0.$$

Step 4. In this step we prove the lemma assuming $(X', \Delta' + N')$ is klt. Let $\epsilon' = \min\{\frac{\epsilon}{2}, \frac{1}{2n}\}$. We claim $(X', \Delta' + N')$ is ϵ' -lc. If not, then there is some prime divisor D with

$$0 < a(D, X', \Delta' + N') < \epsilon'.$$

Note that

$$a(D, X', \Delta' + N') = \frac{1}{2}a(D, X', B') + \frac{1}{2}a\left(D, X', \frac{1}{n}R' + \frac{1}{n}A'\right).$$

Then either $0 < a(D, X', B')$, which implies $\epsilon \leq a(D, X', B')$ by [Lemma 2.48](#), or

$$0 < a\left(D, X', \frac{1}{n}R' + \frac{1}{n}A'\right),$$

which implies

$$\frac{1}{n} \leq a\left(D, X', \frac{1}{n}R' + \frac{1}{n}A'\right).$$

In either case we get

$$a(D, X', \Delta' + N') \geq \epsilon',$$

a contradiction. So $(X', \Delta' + N')$ is ϵ' -lc. Therefore, X' belongs to a bounded family by [\[18, Cor. 1.7\]](#) as the coefficients of $\Delta' + N'$ belong to a fixed finite set, and hence the Cartier index of $K_{X'} + \Delta' + N'$ is bounded by [Lemma 2.25](#). Therefore, there is a bounded n so that $2n(K_{X'} + \Delta' + N') \sim 0$ because $\text{Pic}(X')$ is torsion-free (cf. [\[21, Prop. 2.1.2\]](#)).

Step 5. Finally in this step we treat the case when $(X', \Delta' + N')$ is not klt. Consider this pair as a generalised pair with data $\phi: X \rightarrow X'$ and $N = \frac{1}{2n}A$. We show it is not generalised klt. We can write

$$K_X + E := \phi^*K_{X'} \text{ and } K_X + B := \phi^*(K_{X'} + B')$$

and

$$K_X + E + \frac{1}{n}R + \frac{1}{n}A = \phi^*\left(K_{X'} + \frac{1}{n}R' + \frac{1}{n}A'\right).$$

Thus

$$K_X + \frac{1}{2}B + \frac{1}{2}E + \frac{1}{2n}R + \frac{1}{2n}A = \phi^*(K_{X'} + \Delta' + N'),$$

where

$$\left(X, \frac{1}{2}B + \frac{1}{2}E + \frac{1}{2n}R\right)$$

is not sub-klt because $(X', \Delta' + N')$ is not klt (as a usual pair) and A is general. Therefore, $(X', \Delta' + N')$ is not generalised klt.

Now obviously $N' \not\sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$, hence by [Proposition 6.8](#), $K_{X'} + \Delta' + N'$ has an n -complement $K_{X'} + \Delta'^+ + N'$ for some bounded $n \in \mathbb{N}$ where $\Delta'^+ \geq \Delta'$. Since $K_{X'} + \Delta' + N' \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$, we have $\Delta'^+ = \Delta'$. Therefore, $2n(K_{X'} + \Delta' + N') \sim 0$ as required. \square

LEMMA 6.11. *Assume [Theorem 1.10](#) holds in dimension $\leq d - 1$ and [Theorem 1.8](#) holds in dimension d . Then [Theorem 1.10](#) holds in dimension d for those $(X', B' + M')$ such that*

- $B' \in \mathfrak{R}$; and
- $(X', B' + M')$ is non-exceptional.

Proof. By definition of non-exceptional pairs, there is $P' \geq 0$ such that $K_{X'} + B' + M' + P' \sim_{\mathbb{R}} 0$ and $(X', B' + P' + M')$ is not generalised klt. By [Lemma 2.16](#), we can assume P' is a \mathbb{Q} -divisor and can replace $\sim_{\mathbb{R}}$ with $\sim_{\mathbb{Q}}$. We can assume $(X', B' + P' + M')$ is generalised lc. Otherwise $(X', B' + M')$ is strongly non-exceptional, so we can apply [Lemma 6.9](#).

Let $\Omega' = B' + P'$, and let $(X'', \Omega'' + M'')$ be a \mathbb{Q} -factorial generalised dlt model of $(X', \Omega' + M')$. There is a boundary Θ'' such that $B'^{\sim} \leq \Theta'' \leq \Omega''$, $[\Theta''] \neq 0$, and $\Theta'' \in \mathfrak{R}$ where B'^{\sim} is the birational transform of B' . (Adding 1 to \mathfrak{R} we are assuming $1 \in \mathfrak{R}$.) Let π denote $X'' \rightarrow X'$, and let P'' be the pullback of P' . Then X'' is of Fano type, and

$$-(K_{X''} + \Theta'' + M'') = -(K_{X''} + \Omega'' + M'') + \Omega'' - \Theta'' \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} \Omega'' - \Theta''.$$

Run an MMP on $-(K_{X''} + \Theta'' + M'')$, and let X''' be the resulting model. By the previous paragraph, the MMP ends with a minimal model, that is, $-(K_{X'''} + \Theta''' + M''')$ is nef. Moreover, since $(X''', \Omega''' + M''')$ is generalised lc, $(X''', \Theta''' + M''')$ is generalised lc; however, it is not generalised klt as $(X'', \Theta'' + M'')$ is not generalised klt. [By 6.1\(3\)](#), if $K_{X'''} + \Theta''' + M'''$ has an n -complement

$K_{X'''} + \Theta'''+ + M'''$ with $\Theta'''+ \geq \Theta'''$, then $K_{X''} + \Theta'' + M''$ has an n -complement $K_{X''} + \Theta''+ + M''$ with $\Theta''+ \geq \Theta''$, which in turn gives an n -complement $K_{X'} + B'+ + M'$ of $K_{X'} + B' + M'$ with $B'+ \geq B'$. Replacing $(X', B' + M')$ with $(X''', \Theta''' + M''')$, we can assume $(X', B' + M')$ is not generalised klt.

Applying [Proposition 6.8](#), we can further assume that $M' \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$ and that $K_{X'} + B' + M' \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$, which yield $K_{X'} + B' \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$. In particular, since M is nef, we get $M = \phi^* M' \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$. Since X' is of Fano type, $\text{Pic}(X')$ and $\text{Pic}(X)$ are torsion-free (cf. [\[21, Prop. 2.1.2\]](#)). In particular, $pM \sim 0$, so $pM' \sim 0$. Therefore, it is enough to find a bounded $n \in \mathbb{N}$ divisible by p such that $n(K_{X'} + B') \sim 0$. Now apply [Lemma 6.10](#). \square

6.12. *Boundedness of complements.* In this final subsection we prove the main inductive result of this section.

PROPOSITION 6.13. *Assume [Theorems 1.8](#) and [1.11](#) hold in dimension $\leq d$. Then [Theorem 1.10](#) holds in dimension d .*

Proof. By induction on d we can assume [Theorem 1.10](#) holds in dimension $\leq d - 1$. Let $(X', B' + M')$ be as in [Theorem 1.10](#) in dimension d . Replacing $(X', B' + M')$ with a \mathbb{Q} -factorial generalised dlt model we can assume X' is \mathbb{Q} -factorial.

Pick $\epsilon \in (0, 1)$. Let Θ' be the boundary whose coefficients are the same as B' except that we replace each coefficient in $(1 - \epsilon, 1)$ with 1 (similar to [2.50](#)). That is, we have $\Theta' = (B')^{\leq 1-\epsilon} + [(B')^{>1-\epsilon}]$. Run an MMP on $-(K_{X'} + \Theta' + M')$, and let X'' be the resulting model. By [Proposition 2.50](#), if ϵ is sufficiently small depending only on d, p, \mathfrak{R} , then

- $(X', \Theta' + M')$ is generalised lc;
- the MMP does not contract any component of $[\Theta']$;
- $-(K_{X''} + \Theta'' + M'')$ is nef; and
- $(X'', \Theta'' + M'')$ is generalised lc.

Since 1 is the only accumulation point of $\Phi(\mathfrak{R})$, there is a finite set $\mathfrak{T} \subset [0, 1]$ of rational numbers that includes \mathfrak{R} and that depends only on ϵ, \mathfrak{R} such that $\Theta' \in \mathfrak{T}$. (Note that by our choice of ϵ , \mathfrak{T} depends only on d, p, \mathfrak{R} .)

By [6.1\(3\)](#), if $K_{X''} + \Theta'' + M''$ has an n -complement $K_{X''} + \Theta''+ + M''$ with $\Theta''+ \geq \Theta''$, then we get an n -complement $K_{X'} + \Theta'+ + M'$ of $K_{X'} + \Theta' + M'$ with $\Theta'+ \geq \Theta'$. Since $\Theta' \geq B'$, $K_{X'} + \Theta'+ + M'$ would be an n -complement of $K_{X'} + B' + M'$. Therefore, replacing X', B', M' with X'', Θ'', M'' , and \mathfrak{R} with \mathfrak{T} , we can assume $B' \in \mathfrak{R}$.

By [Lemma 6.11](#), we can assume $(X', B' + M')$ is exceptional. Since we are assuming [Theorem 1.11](#) in dimension d , X' belongs to a bounded family. Thus we can choose a very ample divisor A' so that A'^d and $-A'^{d-1}K_{X'}$ are

bounded from above. By construction,

$$L' := -q(K_{X'} + B' + M')$$

is nef and integral where $q = pI(\mathfrak{R})$. Moreover, $A'^{d-1}L'$ is bounded from above because $B' + M'$ is pseudo-effective, which implies

$$A'^{d-1}L' \leq A'^{d-1}(-qK_{X'})$$

and the right-hand side is bounded. So by [Lemma 2.25](#), there is a bounded number n divisible by q such that $-n(K_{X'} + B' + M')$ is nef and Cartier. Since X' is of Fano type, we can use the effective base point free theorem [\[31\]](#), so we can assume $|-n(K_{X'} + B' + M')|$ is base point free. Now let

$$G' \in |-n(K_{X'} + B' + M')|$$

be a general member, and let $B'^+ = B' + \frac{1}{n}G'$. Then $(X', B'^+ + M')$ is generalised lc and $n(K_{X'} + B'^+ + M') \sim 0$. Hence $K_{X'} + B'^+ + M'$ is an n -complement of $K_{X'} + B' + M'$. \square

7. Boundedness of exceptional pairs

The aim of this section is to treat exceptional pairs and exceptional generalised pairs as in [Theorems 1.3](#) and [1.11](#), inductively. In the non-exceptional case, discussed in the previous section, the main inductive tools were lifting complements from the base of a fibration and from a non-klt centre.

Assume X is an exceptional weak Fano variety of dimension d , as in [Theorem 1.3](#). Let τ be as in [Proposition 4.11](#) in dimension d . If X is τ -lc, then by the proposition, $|-mK_X|$ defines a birational map for some bounded $m \in \mathbb{N}$. In particular, taking $M \in |-mK_X|$ and letting $\Omega = \frac{1}{m}M$, we get a klt m -complement $K_X + \Omega$ as X is exceptional. Hence X is bounded by [\[19, Th. 1.3\]](#). If X is not τ -lc, there is a prime divisor D on birational models of X with log discrepancy $a(D, X, 0) < \tau$. Then there is a birational contraction $\phi: Y \rightarrow X$ from a \mathbb{Q} -factorial variety contracting only one divisor that is D . Thus $K_Y + eD = \phi^*K_X$ where $e > 1 - \tau$. The idea here is to run some kind of MMP (as in [7.4](#)) in which in each step we try to increase e but keep the nefness of $-(K_Y + eD)$. Since X is exceptional, the pair remains klt. In the end we get a model Y' and a fibration $Y' \rightarrow Z'$ along which $K_{Y'} + \tilde{e}D'$ is numerically trivial where $\tilde{e} > e$. It turns out that $(Y', \tilde{e}D')$ is \tilde{e} -lc for some fixed $\tilde{e} > 0$. Applying [1.4](#) we deduce \tilde{e} belongs to a fixed finite set. If $\dim Z' > 0$, then we can pull back a complement from the base and get a bounded complement of K_X and then apply [\[19, Th. 1.3\]](#). If $\dim Z' = 0$, we apply [\[19, Th. 1.3\]](#) once more.

If $(X', B' + M')$ is exceptional as in [Theorem 1.11](#), adapting the strategy of the previous paragraph is much more difficult because of the presence of $B' + M'$. We need to discuss and bound exceptional thresholds ([Lemma 7.7](#)),

bound anti-canonical volumes (Lemma 7.9) and bound anti-canonical singularities (Lemma 7.11) in order to be able to apply a general boundedness criterion (Proposition 7.13). The latter criterion also plays an important role in the proof of BAB [6, proof of Th. 1.1].

7.1. Bound on singularities.

LEMMA 7.2. *Let $d, p \in \mathbb{N}$ and $\Phi \subset [0, 1]$ be a DCC set. Then there is a number $\epsilon > 0$ depending only on d, p, Φ satisfying the following. Let $(X', B' + M')$ be a projective generalised pair with data $\phi: X \rightarrow X'$ and M such that*

- $(X', B' + M')$ is exceptional of dimension d ;
- $B' \in \Phi$ and pM is b-Cartier; and
- X' is of Fano type.

Then for any $0 \leq P' \sim_{\mathbb{R}} -(K_{X'} + B' + M')$, the pair $(X', B' + P' + M')$ is generalised ϵ -lc (where we consider this generalised pair with boundary part $B' + P'$).

Proof. Let $(X', B' + M')$ and P' be as in the statement. Since $(X', B' + M')$ is exceptional, $(X', B' + P' + M')$ is generalised klt. Taking a \mathbb{Q} -factorialisation we can assume X' is \mathbb{Q} -factorial. Let D'' be a prime divisor on birational models of X such that

$$a := a(D'', X', B' + P' + M')$$

is minimal. We can assume $a < 1$. Let $X'' \rightarrow X'$ be the birational contraction that extracts exactly D'' ; it is the identity morphism if D'' is already a divisor on X' . Let $K_{X''} + B'' + M''$ be the pullback of $K_{X'} + B' + M'$, and let P'' be the pullback of P' . Let e and c be the coefficients of D'' in B'' and P'' respectively. (Note that it is possible to have $e < 0$.) By assumption, $e + c = 1 - a > 0$. By 2.13(7), X'' is of Fano type.

Running an MMP on

$$-(K_{X''} + B'' + cD'' + M'') \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} P'' - cD'' \geq 0$$

we get a model X''' on which $-(K_{X'''} + B''' + cD''' + M''')$ is nef. We can assume the induced maps $\psi: X \dashrightarrow X''$ and $\pi: X \dashrightarrow X'''$ are morphisms. Then

$$\pi^*(K_{X'''} + B''' + cD''' + M''') \geq \psi^*(K_{X''} + B'' + cD'' + M'').$$

Let ϵ be the number given by Proposition 2.50 for the data d, p, Φ . We will show that $a \geq \epsilon$. Assume not, that is, assume $a < \epsilon$. We will derive a contradiction. Let Θ''' be the same as $B''' + cD'''$ except that we replace each coefficient in $(1 - \epsilon, 1)$ with 1. Next run an MMP on $-(K_{X'''} + \Theta''' + M''')$. Let \bar{X} be the resulting model. Then by 2.50, $-(K_{\bar{X}} + \bar{\Theta} + \bar{M})$ is nef. We can

assume the induced map $\rho: X \dashrightarrow \bar{X}$ is a morphism. Then

$$\begin{aligned} \rho^*(K_{\bar{X}} + \bar{\Theta} + \bar{M}) &\geq \pi^*(K_{X'''} + \Theta''' + M''') \geq \pi^*(K_{X''} + B''' + cD''' + M'') \\ &\geq \psi^*(K_{X''} + B'' + cD'' + M'') \geq \phi^*(K_{X'} + B' + M'). \end{aligned}$$

By construction, $[\Theta'''] \neq 0$. Hence $(X''', \Theta''' + M''')$ is not generalised klt, which in turn implies $(\bar{X}, \bar{\Theta} + \bar{M})$ is not generalised klt. In particular, $(\bar{X}, \bar{\Theta} + \bar{M})$ is not exceptional as $-(K_{\bar{X}} + \bar{\Theta} + \bar{M})$ is nef and \bar{X} is of Fano type. Therefore, $(X', B' + M')$ is not exceptional, by [Lemma 2.17](#), a contradiction. \square

7.3. *From complements to [Theorem 1.3](#).* Before treating [1.3](#) we prove a lemma.

LEMMA 7.4. *Assume that*

- (X, B) is a projective \mathbb{Q} -factorial pair;
- $-(K_X + B)$ is nef;
- X is of Fano type; and that
- $D \neq 0$ is an effective \mathbb{R} -divisor on X .

Then there is a $-D$ -MMP ending with a non-birational contraction $X' \rightarrow T'$ such that

- $-(K_{X'} + B' + tD')$ is globally nef and numerically trivial over T' for some $t \geq 0$, and
- the intersection of $K_X + B + tD$ with each extremal ray in the MMP is non-negative.

Proof. Let s be the largest real number such that $-(K_X + B + sD)$ is nef. Note that it is possible to have $s = 0$, e.g., when $K_X + B \equiv 0$. Since X is of Fano type, the Mori cone of X is generated by finitely many extremal rays. Hence there is an extremal ray R such that

$$(K_X + B + sD) \cdot R = 0 \text{ and } D \cdot R > 0.$$

If R defines a non-birational contraction, then we stop and let $t = s$ and let $X = X' \rightarrow T'$ be that contraction. If not, we let $X \dashrightarrow Y$ be the divisorial contraction or flip defined by R . Then $-(K_Y + B_Y + sD_Y)$ is nef where B_Y, D_Y are the pushdowns of B, D . Moreover, Y is of Fano type, and since $D \cdot R > 0$, we have $D_Y \neq 0$. Now let u be the largest real number such that $-(K_Y + B_Y + uD_Y)$ is nef, and continue as above.

The process gives a $-D$ -MMP that eventually ends with a $-D$ -Mori fibre space, that is, a non-birational contraction $X' \rightarrow T'$ such that D' is ample over T' because D is effective. By construction, $-(K_{X'} + B' + tD')$ is nef globally and numerically trivial over T' for some $t \geq 0$. In the first step of the MMP

we have

$$(K_X + B + tD) \cdot R = (t - s)D \cdot R \geq 0.$$

The same is true in each step; hence the intersection of $K_X + B + tD$ with each extremal ray in the MMP is non-negative. \square

LEMMA 7.5. *Assume Theorem 1.10 holds in dimension $\leq d - 1$ and Theorem 1.8 holds in dimension d . Then Theorem 1.3 holds in dimension d .*

Proof. Assume the statement is not true. Then there is a sequence X_i of exceptional weak Fano varieties of dimension d that do not form a bounded family. Let $q_i \in \mathbb{N}$ be the smallest number such that $|-q_i K_{X_i}|$ is base point free. Then K_{X_i} has a q_i -complement that is necessarily klt because X_i is exceptional. The set of the q_i is not finite by [19, Th. 1.3]. Replacing the sequence X_i with a subsequence we can assume the q_i form a strictly increasing sequence. In particular, no infinite subsequence of the X_i forms a bounded family. Let $X_i \rightarrow \tilde{X}_i$ be the contraction defined by $-K_{X_i}$. Then \tilde{X}_i are Fano varieties, and they do not form a bounded family; otherwise the q_i would be in a finite set. Thus replacing X_i with \tilde{X}_i we can assume X_i are Fano varieties.

Let ϵ_i be the minimal log discrepancy of X_i . Let $\epsilon = \limsup \epsilon_i$. First assume $\epsilon < 1$. Replacing the sequence we can assume $\epsilon_i \leq \epsilon$ for every i . There is a birational contraction $X'_i \rightarrow X_i$ from a \mathbb{Q} -factorial variety that contracts only one prime divisor D'_i and $a(D'_i, X_i, 0) = \epsilon_i$. Let $K_{X'_i} + e_i D'_i$ be the pullback of K_{X_i} . Then $e_i = 1 - \epsilon_i \geq 1 - \epsilon$. By Lemma 7.4, there is a $-D'_i$ -MMP ending with a non-birational contraction $X''_i \rightarrow T''_i$ such that

- $-(K_{X''_i} + e_i D''_i + t_i D''_i)$ is nef globally and numerically trivial over T''_i for some $t_i \geq 0$; and
- the intersection of $K_{X'_i} + e_i D'_i + t_i D'_i$ with each extremal ray in the MMP is non-negative.

Let $\tilde{e}_i = e_i + t_i$, which is $\geq 1 - \epsilon$. Take common resolutions $\phi_i: W_i \rightarrow X_i$, $\psi_i: W_i \rightarrow X'_i$ and $\pi_i: W_i \rightarrow X''_i$. Then

$$\pi_i^*(K_{X''_i} + \tilde{e}_i D''_i) \geq \psi_i^*(K_{X'_i} + \tilde{e}_i D'_i) \geq \psi_i^*(K_{X'_i} + e_i D'_i) = \phi_i^* K_{X_i},$$

where the first inequality follows from the second item in the list of the properties of the MMP above. Thus if $0 \leq P''_i \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} -(K_{X''_i} + \tilde{e}_i D''_i)$ and if $K_{X_i} + P_i$ is the crepant pullback of $K_{X''_i} + \tilde{e}_i D''_i + P''_i$ to X_i , then $P_i \geq 0$.

Applying Lemma 7.2, (X_i, P_i) is $\tilde{\epsilon}$ -lc for some $\tilde{\epsilon} > 0$ independent of i . Thus $(X''_i, \tilde{e}_i D''_i)$ is also $\tilde{\epsilon}$ -lc. Applying Theorem 1.4 to the restriction of $K_{X''_i} + \tilde{e}_i D''_i$ to the general fibres of $X''_i \rightarrow T''_i$ shows that these fibres belong to a bounded family. Moreover, by Lemma 2.22, \tilde{e}_i belongs to a finite set independent of i .

If $\dim T''_i > 0$, then by Proposition 6.5, $K_{X''_i} + \tilde{e}_i D''_i$ has an n -complement $K_{X''_i} + B''_i$ for some n independent of i such that $\tilde{e}_i D''_i \leq B''_i$. On the other hand, if $\dim T''_i = 0$, then by [19, Th. 1.3] the varieties X''_i form a bounded

famil. Hence by Lemma 2.25, the Cartier index of $K_{X'_i} + \tilde{e}_i D''_i$ is bounded, so again $K_{X'_i} + \tilde{e}_i D''_i$ has an n -complement $K_{X'_i} + B''_i$ for some n independent of i , where in this case $\tilde{e}_i D''_i = B''_i$. Therefore, by 6.1(2), $K_{X'_i} + \tilde{e}_i D'_i$ has an n -complement $K_{X'_i} + B'_i$ for some n such that $\tilde{e}_i D'_i \leq B'_i$, and this in turn implies K_{X_i} has an n -complement $K_{X_i} + B_i$. Since X_i is exceptional, (X_i, B_i) is klt. So the X_i form a bounded family by [19, Th. 1.3], a contradiction.

Now we can assume that $\epsilon = 1$ and that the ϵ_i are sufficiently close to 1. By Proposition 4.11, there exists $m \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $|-mK_{X_i}|$ defines a birational map for every i . Pick $0 \leq C_i \sim -mK_{X_i}$. Since X_i is exceptional, $(X_i, B_i := \frac{1}{m}C_i)$ is klt, and hence it is $\frac{1}{m}$ -lc. Therefore, the X_i are bounded by [19, Th. 1.3], a contradiction. \square

7.6. Bound on exceptional thresholds.

LEMMA 7.7. *Let $d, p \in \mathbb{N}$, and let $\Phi \subset [0, 1]$ be a DCC set. Then there is $\beta \in (0, 1)$ depending only on d, p, Φ satisfying the following. Assume $(X', B' + M')$ is a projective generalised pair with data $\phi: X \rightarrow X'$ and M such that*

- $(X', B' + M')$ is exceptional of dimension d ;
- $B' \in \Phi$, and pM is b-Cartier;
- $-(K_{X'} + B' + M')$ is nef; and
- X' is of Fano type and \mathbb{Q} -factorial.

Then $(X', B' + \alpha M')$ is exceptional for every $\alpha \in [\beta, 1]$.

Proof. Suppose the lemma is not true. Then there exist a strictly increasing sequence of numbers α_i approaching 1 and a sequence $(X'_i, B'_i + M'_i)$ of generalised pairs as in the statement such that $(X'_i, B'_i + \alpha_i M'_i)$ is not exceptional. In particular, M'_i is not numerically trivial. Since

$$-(K_{X'_i} + B'_i + \alpha_i M'_i) = -(K_{X'_i} + B'_i + M'_i) + (1 - \alpha_i)M'_i$$

is pseudo-effective and X'_i is of Fano type, there is

$$0 \leq P'_i \sim_{\mathbb{R}} -(K_{X'_i} + B'_i + \alpha_i M'_i),$$

so it makes sense to say that $(X'_i, B'_i + \alpha_i M'_i)$ is non-exceptional. In particular, we can choose P'_i such that $(X'_i, B'_i + P'_i + \alpha_i M'_i)$ is not generalised klt. Moreover, running an MMP on P'_i we can assume it is nef. Note that since $N_{\sigma}(P'_i) = 0$, the MMP does not contract any divisor. Hence all our assumptions are preserved except that $-(K_{X'} + B' + M')$ may no longer be nef, but we will not need nefness.

Let t_i be the generalised lc threshold of P'_i with respect to $(X'_i, B'_i + \alpha_i M'_i)$. Then $t_i \leq 1$. Let $\Omega'_i = B'_i + t_i P'_i$, and let $(X''_i, \Omega''_i + \alpha_i M''_i)$ be a \mathbb{Q} -factorial generalised dlt model of $(X'_i, \Omega'_i + \alpha_i M'_i)$. Adding 1 to Φ , we can find a boundary $\Gamma''_i \in \Phi$ such that $B'_i \sim \leq \Gamma''_i \leq \Omega''_i$ and $[\Gamma''_i] \neq 0$, where $B'_i \sim$ is the birational

transform of B'_i . Let $G''_i = \Omega''_i - \Gamma''_i$. Then from

$$\begin{aligned} -(K_{X'_i} + \Omega'_i + \alpha_i M'_i) &= -(K_{X'_i} + B'_i + t_i P'_i + \alpha_i M'_i) \\ &= -(K_{X'_i} + B'_i + \alpha_i M'_i) - t_i P'_i \sim_{\mathbb{R}} P'_i - t_i P'_i = (1 - t_i)P'_i, \end{aligned}$$

we get

$$-(K_{X''_i} + \Gamma''_i + \alpha_i M''_i) = -(K_{X''_i} + \Omega''_i + \alpha_i M''_i) + G''_i \sim_{\mathbb{R}} (1 - t_i)P''_i + G''_i \geq 0,$$

where P''_i is the pullback of P'_i .

By 2.13(7), X''_i is of Fano type. Run an MMP on $-(K_{X''_i} + \Gamma''_i + M''_i)$ and let X'''_i be the resulting model. First we argue that $(X'''_i, \Gamma'''_i + M'''_i)$ is generalised lc for $i \gg 0$. Since $(X''_i, \Omega''_i + \alpha_i M''_i)$ is generalised lc and since $-(K_{X''_i} + \Omega''_i + \alpha_i M''_i)$ is nef hence semi-ample, we deduce that $(X''_i, \Omega''_i + \alpha_i M''_i)$ is generalised lc, which in turn implies $(X'''_i, \Gamma'''_i + \alpha_i M'''_i)$ is generalised lc. Now by the ACC for generalised lc thresholds [9, Th. 1.5], $(X'''_i, \Gamma'''_i + M'''_i)$ is generalised lc for $i \gg 0$. Hence we can assume this holds for every i .

We show that X'''_i is a minimal model, that is, $-(K_{X'''_i} + \Gamma'''_i + M'''_i)$ is nef, for $i \gg 0$. Assume not. Then we can assume the MMP ends with a Mori fibre space; that is, there is an extremal non-birational contraction $X'''_i \rightarrow T'''_i$ such that $K_{X'''_i} + \Gamma'''_i + M'''_i$ is ample over T'''_i . Let $\lambda_i \in [\alpha_i, 1]$ be the smallest number such that $K_{X'''_i} + \Gamma'''_i + \lambda_i M'''_i$ is nef over T'''_i . Since

$$-(K_{X'''_i} + \Gamma'''_i + \alpha_i M'''_i) \sim_{\mathbb{R}} (1 - t_i)P'''_i + G'''_i \geq 0,$$

$K_{X'''_i} + \Gamma'''_i + \alpha_i M'''_i$ cannot be ample over T'''_i . Thus M'''_i is ample over T'''_i and $K_{X'''_i} + \Gamma'''_i + \lambda_i M'''_i \equiv 0/T'''_i$. By restricting $K_{X'''_i} + \Gamma'''_i + \lambda_i M'''_i$ to the general fibres of $X'''_i \rightarrow T'''_i$ and applying the global ACC for generalised pairs [9, Th. 1.6] we get a contradiction.

We can assume the induced maps $\psi_i: X_i \dashrightarrow X''_i$ and $\pi_i: X_i \dashrightarrow X'''_i$ are morphisms. Then

$$-\pi_i^*(K_{X'''_i} + \Gamma'''_i + M'''_i) \leq -\psi_i^*(K_{X''_i} + \Gamma''_i + M''_i).$$

Thus since $-(K_{X'''_i} + \Gamma'''_i + M'''_i)$ is semi-ample, there is

$$0 \leq Q''_i \sim_{\mathbb{R}} -(K_{X''_i} + \Gamma''_i + M''_i).$$

Hence $(X''_i, \Gamma''_i + M''_i)$ is non-exceptional. Therefore, $(X'_i, \Gamma'_i + M'_i)$ is non-exceptional where Γ'_i is the pushdown of Γ''_i . This in turn implies $(X'_i, B'_i + M'_i)$ is non-exceptional as $B'_i \leq \Gamma'_i$, a contradiction. \square

7.8. Bound on anti-canonical volumes.

LEMMA 7.9. *Let $d, p \in \mathbb{N}$, and let $\Phi \subset [0, 1]$ be a DCC set. Then there is v depending only on d, p, Φ satisfying the following. Let $(X', B' + M')$ be a projective generalised pair with data $\phi: X \rightarrow X'$ and M such that*

- $(X', B' + M')$ is generalised klt of dimension d ;
- $B' \in \Phi$, and pM is b -Cartier and big; and
- $K_{X'} + B' + M' \sim_{\mathbb{R}} 0$.

Then $\text{vol}(-K_{X'}) \leq v$.

Proof. First note that the assumptions imply that X' is of Fano type. Indeed, since M is big, M' is big, so $M' \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} H' + D'$ where H' is ample and D' is effective. Now if $\lambda > 0$ is small, then

$$(X', B' + \lambda D' + \lambda H' + (1 - \lambda)M')$$

is generalised klt, which implies that

$$(X', B' + \lambda D' + (1 - \lambda)M')$$

is generalised klt too. Moreover,

$$-(K_{X'} + B' + \lambda D' + (1 - \lambda)M') \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} \lambda H'$$

is ample, so X' is of Fano type by 2.13(6).

Now if the lemma does not hold, then there is a sequence of generalised pairs $(X'_i, B'_i + M'_i)$ as in the statement such that the volumes $\text{vol}(-K_{X'_i})$ form a strictly increasing sequence approaching ∞ . After taking a small \mathbb{Q} -factorialisation we can assume X'_i is \mathbb{Q} -factorial. Moreover, replacing X_i we can assume $X_i \rightarrow X'_i$ is a resolution; in particular, pM_i is Cartier. Since pM_i is nef and big, by Lemma 2.46, $K_{X_i} + 3dpM_i$ is big, hence $K_{X'_i} + 3dpM'_i$ is big too. Thus

$$\text{vol}(-K_{X'_i}) < \text{vol}(-K_{X'_i} + K_{X_i} + 3dpM_i) = \text{vol}(3dpM'_i).$$

Hence it is enough to show $\text{vol}(M'_i)$ is bounded from above. We can then assume the volumes $\text{vol}(M'_i)$ form a strictly increasing sequence of numbers approaching ∞ .

There is a strictly decreasing sequence of numbers δ_i approaching zero such that $\text{vol}(\delta_i M'_i) > (2d)^d$. Thus letting $\alpha_i = 1 - \delta_i$,

$$\text{vol}(-(K_{X'_i} + B'_i + \alpha_i M'_i)) = \text{vol}(\delta_i M'_i) > (2d)^d.$$

On the other hand, running an MMP on M'_i and replacing X'_i with the resulting model, we can assume M'_i is nef and big. Note that the MMP does not contract any divisor, so all the assumptions are preserved. Now by 2.31(2), there is some

$$0 \leq P'_i \sim_{\mathbb{R}} -(K_{X'_i} + B'_i + \alpha_i M'_i)$$

such that (X'_i, P'_i) is not klt, which in turn implies $(X'_i, B'_i + P'_i + \alpha_i M'_i)$ is not generalised klt. (Note that M'_i may not be ample but 2.31(2) still applies as M'_i is nef and big so it can be approximated by ample divisors with volume $> (2d)^d$.) In particular, $(X'_i, B'_i + \alpha_i M'_i)$ is non-exceptional. This contradicts

Lemma 7.7 as $\lim \alpha_i = 1$ and $(X'_i, B'_i + M'_i)$ are exceptional as $(X'_i, B'_i + M'_i)$ is generalised klt and $K_{X'_i} + B'_i + M'_i \sim_{\mathbb{R}} 0$. \square

7.10. *Bound on lc thresholds.*

LEMMA 7.11. *Let $d, p, l \in \mathbb{N}$, and let $\Phi \subset [0, 1]$ be a DCC set. Then there is a positive real number t depending only on d, p, l, Φ satisfying the following. Let $(X', B' + M')$ be a projective generalised pair with data $\phi: X \rightarrow X'$ and M such that*

- $(X', B' + M')$ is exceptional of dimension d ;
- $B' \in \Phi$, and pM is b-Cartier and big;
- $-(K_{X'} + B' + M')$ is nef; and
- X' is of Fano type and \mathbb{Q} -factorial.

Then for any $L' \in |-lK_{X'}|$, the pair (X', tL') is klt.

Proof. If the statement does not hold, then there exist a decreasing sequence of numbers t_i approaching zero and a sequence $(X'_i, B'_i + M'_i)$ of generalised pairs as in the statement such that $(X'_i, t_i L'_i)$ is not klt for some $L'_i \in |-lK_{X'_i}|$. Replacing X_i we can assume $X_i \rightarrow X'_i$ is a resolution; in particular, pM_i is Cartier. Since pM_i is nef and big, by [Lemma 2.46](#), $K_{X_i} + 3dpM_i$ is big, hence

$$K_{X'_i} + 3dpM'_i \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} -\frac{1}{l}L'_i + 3dpM'_i$$

is also big.

By [Lemma 7.7](#), there is a rational number $\beta \in (0, 1)$ such that $(X'_i, B'_i + \beta M'_i)$ is exceptional for every i . Let s_i be the generalised lc threshold of L'_i with respect to $(X'_i, B'_i + \beta M'_i)$. Then $s_i \leq t_i$. We can assume $s_i < \frac{1-\beta}{3dpl}$ for every i . Thus

$$-(K_{X'_i} + B'_i + s_i L'_i + \beta M'_i) = -(K_{X'_i} + B'_i + M'_i) + (1 - \beta)M'_i - s_i L'_i$$

is big by the previous paragraph. Therefore, there is

$$0 \leq P'_i \sim_{\mathbb{R}} -(K_{X'_i} + B'_i + s_i L'_i + \beta M'_i).$$

Now

$$(X'_i, B'_i + s_i L'_i + P'_i + \beta M'_i)$$

is not generalised klt, so $(X'_i, B'_i + \beta M'_i)$ is non-exceptional. This is a contradiction. \square

7.12. *From bound on lc thresholds to boundedness of varieties.* The next result is one of the key statements of this section. As mentioned before it plays a crucial role in the proof of BAB as well [[6](#), proof of Th. 1.1].

PROPOSITION 7.13. *Let $d, m, v \in \mathbb{N}$, and let t_l be a sequence of positive real numbers. Assume [Theorem 1.10](#) holds in dimension $\leq d - 1$ and [Theorem 1.8](#) holds in dimension d . Let \mathcal{P} be the set of projective varieties X such that*

- X is a klt weak Fano variety of dimension d ;
- K_X has an m -complement;
- $|-mK_X|$ defines a birational map;
- $\text{vol}(-K_X) \leq v$; and
- for any $l \in \mathbb{N}$ and any $L \in |-lK_X|$, the pair $(X, t_l L)$ is klt.

Then \mathcal{P} is a bounded family.

Proof. We first give a short summary of the proof. Using the assumption that $|-mK_X|$ defines a birational map and $\text{vol}(-K_X) \leq v$, we find a bounded smooth birational model \overline{W} of X . We take an m -complement $K_X + B^+$ of K_X . If the complement is klt, we apply [\[19, Th. 1.3\]](#). Otherwise we let $K_{\overline{W}} + B_{\overline{W}}^+$ be the crepant pullback of $K_X + B^+$ to \overline{W} , and we try to perturb $B_{\overline{W}}^+$ to get $\Delta_{\overline{W}} \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} B_{\overline{W}}^+$ with $K_{\overline{W}} + \Delta_{\overline{W}}$ being sub-klt and with bounded Cartier index. We pull back the latter to X to get $K_X + \Delta$. The main issue here is that Δ may not be effective. Using the final assumption of the proposition and some complement theory we construct Θ with coefficients in a fixed finite set so that $K_X + \Theta \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$ is klt, and we again apply [\[19, Th. 1.3\]](#).

Step 1. In this step we consider a birationally bounded model of X . By [Lemma 2.26](#), we can take a small \mathbb{Q} -factorialisation of X , and hence assume X is \mathbb{Q} -factorial. Let M be a general element of $|-mK_X|$. Applying [Proposition 4.4](#) (with $B = 0$), there is a bounded set of couples \mathcal{P} and a number $c \in \mathbb{R}^{>0}$ depending only on d, v such that there is a projective log smooth couple $(\overline{W}, \Sigma_{\overline{W}}) \in \mathcal{P}$ and a birational map $\overline{W} \dashrightarrow X$ such that

- $\text{Supp } \Sigma_{\overline{W}}$ contains the exceptional divisor of $\overline{W} \dashrightarrow X$ and the birational transform of $\text{Supp } M$;
- if $X' \rightarrow X$ and $X' \rightarrow \overline{W}$ is a common resolution and $M_{\overline{W}}$ is the pushdown of $M_{X'} := M|_{X'}$, then each coefficient of $M_{\overline{W}}$ is at most c ;
- there is a resolution $\phi: W \rightarrow X$ such that $M_W := M|_W \sim A_W + R_W$, where A_W is the movable part of $|M_W|$, $|A_W|$ is base point free, and if $X' \rightarrow X$ factors through W , then $A_{X'} := A_W|_{X'} \sim 0/\overline{X}$.

Note that since we assumed M is a general element of $|-mK_X|$, we can assume that $M_W = A_W + R_W$ and that A_W is general in $|A_W|$. In particular, if $A_{\overline{W}}$ is the pushdown of $A_W|_{X'}$, then $A_{\overline{W}} \leq \Sigma_{\overline{W}}$.

Step 2. In this step we discuss complements. Let M, A, R be the pushdowns of M_W, A_W, R_W to X . By assumption K_X has an m -complement, say $K_X + B^+$. In particular, mB^+ is an element of the linear system $|M| = |-mK_X|$. But since (X, B^+) is lc and since $A + R$ is a general element of

$|-mK_X|$, we deduce that $(X, \frac{1}{m}A + \frac{1}{m}R)$ is lc too. Thus replacing B^+ we can assume $B^+ = \frac{1}{m}A + \frac{1}{m}R$. By [19, Th. 1.3], we can assume (X, B^+) is not klt. The idea is to construct another complement that is klt. Replacing m from the beginning we can assume $m > 1$ so that A is not a component of $\lfloor B^+ \rfloor$.

Step 3. In this step we use the model \overline{W} to construct a new lc complement $K_X + \Omega$. Since $|A_{\overline{W}}|$ defines a birational contraction and since $A_{\overline{W}} \leq \Sigma_{\overline{W}}$, there is $l \in \mathbb{N}$ depending only on the family \mathcal{P} such that $lA_{\overline{W}} \sim G_{\overline{W}}$ for some $G_{\overline{W}} \geq 0$ whose support contains $\Sigma_{\overline{W}}$. Now let $K_{\overline{W}} + B_{\overline{W}}^+$ be the crepant pullback of $K_X + B^+$ to \overline{W} . Then $(\overline{W}, B_{\overline{W}}^+)$ is sub-lc and

$$\text{Supp } B_{\overline{W}}^+ \subseteq \Sigma_{\overline{W}} \subseteq \text{Supp } G_{\overline{W}}.$$

Let G be the pushdown of $G_{X'} := G_{\overline{W}}|_{X'}$ to X where as in Step 1, $X' \rightarrow X$ and $X' \rightarrow \overline{W}$ is a common resolution. Since $A_{X'} \sim 0/\overline{W}$, we deduce that $A_{X'}$ is the pullback of $A_{\overline{W}}$. Thus from $lA_{\overline{W}} \sim G_{\overline{W}}$ we get $lA_{X'} \sim G_{X'}$, which in turn gives $lA \sim G$. Therefore, $G + lR \in |-lmK_X|$.

Now, by assumption, $(X, t(G + lR))$ is klt where $t := t_{lm}$. In particular, this means the coefficients of $t(G + lR)$ belong to a fixed finite set depending only on t . Decreasing t we can assume it is rational and that $t < \frac{1}{lm}$.

If $(X, \frac{1}{lm}(G + lR))$ is lc, then we let $\Omega = \frac{1}{lm}(G + lR)$ and $n = lm$. But if it is not lc, then the pair $(X, t(G + lR))$ is strongly non-exceptional. Hence by Lemma 6.9, there is n depending only on d, t such that there is $\Omega \geq t(G + lR)$ with (X, Ω) is lc and $n(K_X + \Omega) \sim 0$.

Step 4. In this step we introduce $\Delta_{\overline{W}}$ and Δ . Let

$$\Delta_{\overline{W}} := B_{\overline{W}}^+ + \frac{t}{m}A_{\overline{W}} - \frac{t}{lm}G_{\overline{W}},$$

which satisfies $K_{\overline{W}} + \Delta_{\overline{W}} \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$. Since $A_{\overline{W}}$ is not a component of $\lfloor B_{\overline{W}}^+ \rfloor$ and since $\text{Supp } B_{\overline{W}}^+ \subseteq \text{Supp } G_{\overline{W}}$, there is $\epsilon > 0$ depending only on t, l, m such that $(\overline{W}, \Delta_{\overline{W}})$ is sub- ϵ -lc.

Let $K_X + \Delta$ be the crepant pullback of $K_{\overline{W}} + \Delta_{\overline{W}}$ to X . Then $K_X + \Delta \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$ and (X, Δ) is sub- ϵ -lc. However,

$$\Delta = B^+ + \frac{t}{m}A - \frac{t}{lm}G$$

has negative coefficients, so (X, Δ) is only a sub-pair.

Step 5. Finally we produce a suitable klt complement $K_X + \Theta$ and prove boundedness of X . Let $\Theta = \frac{1}{2}\Delta + \frac{1}{2}\Omega$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} \Theta &= \frac{1}{2}B^+ + \frac{t}{2m}A - \frac{t}{2lm}G + \frac{1}{2}\Omega \\ &\geq \frac{1}{2}B^+ + \frac{t}{2m}A - \frac{t}{2lm}G + \frac{t}{2}(G + lR) \geq -\frac{t}{2lm}G + \frac{t}{2}G \geq 0. \end{aligned}$$

Since (X, Δ) is sub- ϵ -lc and (X, Ω) is lc, (X, Θ) is $\frac{\epsilon}{2}$ -lc. Moreover, $K_X + \Theta \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$, and the coefficients of Θ belong to a fixed finite set depending only on t, l, m, n . Now apply [19, Th. 1.3]. \square

7.14. *From complements to Theorem 1.11.* We arrive at the main result of this section.

PROPOSITION 7.15. *Assume Theorem 1.10 holds in dimension $\leq d-1$ and Theorem 1.8 holds in dimension d . Then Theorem 1.11 holds in dimension d .*

Proof. We first give a short summary of the proof. We reduce boundedness of $(X', \text{Supp } B')$ to boundedness of X' , and to the case $B' \in \mathfrak{R}$. We argue that it is enough to construct a bounded klt complement of X' . We consider an lc complement of $K_{X'}$ and then reduce the problem to the situation when $K_{X'} + B' + M' \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$ and M' is big. Finally we apply 7.13 to the minimal model of $-K_{X'}$ to produce the required bounded klt complement of $K_{X'}$.

Step 1. In this step we reduce the problem to boundedness of X' and the case $B' \in \mathfrak{R}$. Let $(X', B' + M')$ be as in Theorem 1.11 in dimension d . It is enough to show X' is bounded because then we can find a very ample Cartier divisor H' so that $-K_{X'} \cdot H'^{d-1}$ is bounded from above. (Note that although X' may not be \mathbb{Q} -factorial, $D' \cdot H'^{d-1}$ is well defined for any Weil divisor D' .) Then

$$B' \cdot H'^{d-1} \leq B' \cdot H'^{d-1} - (K_{X'} + B' + M') \cdot H'^{d-1} \leq -K_{X'} \cdot H'^{d-1},$$

where the first inequality follows from nefness of $-(K_{X'} + B' + M')$ and the second inequality follows from the fact that M' is pseudo-effective. Thus $B' \cdot H'^{d-1}$ is bounded, and this implies (X', B') is log bounded as the coefficients of B' belong to the DCC set $\Phi(\mathfrak{R})$.

On the other hand, by Lemma 7.2, $(X', B' + M')$ is generalised ϵ -lc for some $\epsilon > 0$ depending only on d, p, \mathfrak{R} . In particular, the coefficients of B' belong to a finite set depending only on d, p, \mathfrak{R} because 1 is the only accumulation point of $\Phi(\mathfrak{R})$. Extending \mathfrak{R} we can assume $B' \in \mathfrak{R}$.

Step 2. In this step we reduce the problem to existence of a klt complement and the case when X' is \mathbb{Q} -factorial. By [19, Th. 1.3], it is enough to show that $K_{X'}$ has a klt a -complement for some bounded number $a \in \mathbb{N}$. This in turn follows from existence of a klt a -complement for $K_{X''}$ for a bounded $a \in \mathbb{N}$ where $X'' \rightarrow X'$ is a small \mathbb{Q} -factorialisation. Let $K_{X''} + B'' + M''$ be the pullback of $K_{X'} + B' + M'$. Then replacing X', B', M' with X'', B'', M'' , we can assume X' is \mathbb{Q} -factorial.

Step 3. In this step we consider a suitable lc complement of $K_{X'}$. Run an MMP on $-K_{X'}$, and let \tilde{X}' be the resulting model that is a klt weak Fano.

Then $K_{\tilde{X}'}$ has an n -complement for some n depending only on d by applying [Lemma 7.5](#) if \tilde{X}' is exceptional or by applying [Lemma 6.11](#) otherwise. This implies $K_{X'}$ also has an n -complement $K_{X'} + C'$, by [6.1\(3\)](#).

On the other hand, since $(X', B' + M')$ is generalised ϵ -lc and $-(K_{X'} + B' + M')$ is semi-ample, $(\tilde{X}', \tilde{B}' + \tilde{M}')$ is generalised ϵ -lc, where \tilde{B}', \tilde{M}' are the pushdowns of B', M' . Thus \tilde{X}' is ϵ -lc. Thus by [Proposition 4.9](#), $|-mK_{\tilde{X}'}|$ defines a birational map for some $m \in \mathbb{N}$ depending only on d, ϵ, n , which in turn implies $|-mK_{X'}|$ also defines a birational map. Replacing both m and n by pmn , we can assume that $m = n$ and that p divides m, n . Moreover, by [Lemma 2.6](#), replacing $\phi: X \rightarrow X'$ and C' we can assume $C' = \frac{1}{m}A' + \frac{1}{m}R'$, where $\phi^*(-mK_{X'}) \sim A + R$, A is the movable part of $|\phi^*(-mK_{X'})|$, $|A|$ is base point free, and R is the fixed part.

Step 4. In this and the next step we reduce the problem to the situation in which $K_{X'} + B' + M' \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$ and where M is big. We do this by introducing a new generalised pair $(X', \Delta' + N')$. Let

$$\Delta' := \frac{1}{2}B' + \frac{1}{2m}R' \text{ and } N := \frac{1}{2}M + \frac{1}{2m}A.$$

Then $(X', \Delta' + N')$ is generalised lc and $-(K_{X'} + \Delta' + N')$ is nef. Note that the coefficients of Δ' belong to a fixed finite set depending only on \mathfrak{X}, m , and that $2pmN$ is b-Cartier.

Assume $(X', \Delta' + N')$ is non-exceptional. Then by [Lemma 6.11](#), $K_{X'} + \Delta' + N'$ has an l -complement $K_{X'} + \Delta'^+ + N'$ for some l depending only on d, p, m, \mathfrak{X} such that $G' := \Delta'^+ - \Delta' \geq 0$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} lm(K_{X'} + B' + 2G' + M') &\sim lm(K_{X'} + B' + 2G' + M') + lm(K_{X'} + C') \\ &= lm(2K_{X'} + B' + \frac{1}{m}R' + 2G' + M' + \frac{1}{m}A') \\ &= 2lm(K_{X'} + \Delta' + G' + N') = 2lm(K_{X'} + \Delta'^+ + N') \sim 0. \end{aligned}$$

Let $B'^+ = B' + 2G'$. Since $(X', B' + M')$ is exceptional, $(X', B'^+ + M')$ is generalised klt. Thus

$$\left(X', \frac{1}{2}B'^+ + \frac{1}{2}\Delta'^+ + \frac{1}{2}M' + \frac{1}{2}N'\right)$$

is generalised klt, and hence exceptional because

$$K_{X'} + \frac{1}{2}B'^+ + \frac{1}{2}\Delta'^+ + \frac{1}{2}M' + \frac{1}{2}N' \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0.$$

Now replace B' with $\frac{1}{2}B'^+ + \frac{1}{2}\Delta'^+$ and replace M with $\frac{1}{2}M + \frac{1}{2}N$. Replacing p, \mathfrak{X} accordingly, we can then assume that $K_{X'} + B' + M' \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$ and that M is big.

Step 5. In this step we assume $(X', \Delta' + N')$ is exceptional. By [Lemma 7.7](#), there is a rational number $\beta \in (0, 1)$ depending only on d, p, m, \mathfrak{R} such that $(X', \Delta' + \beta N')$ is exceptional. Since $N = \frac{1}{2}M + \frac{1}{2m}A$ and A is base point free and big, there is $r \in \mathbb{N}$ such that

$$-r(K_{X'} + \Delta' + \beta N') = -r(K_{X'} + \Delta' + N') + r(1 - \beta)N'$$

is integral and potentially birational where r depends only on $d, p, m, \beta, \mathfrak{R}$. Then

$$|K_{X'} - r(K_{X'} + \Delta' + \beta N')|$$

defines a birational map by [[17](#), Lemma 2.3.4]. Hence

$$|mK_{X'} - rm(K_{X'} + \Delta' + \beta N')|$$

also defines a birational map, which in turn implies that

$$|-rm(K_{X'} + \Delta' + \beta N')| = |mK_{X'} + mC' - rm(K_{X'} + \Delta' + \beta N')|$$

defines a birational map as well. In particular, there is $\Delta'^+ \geq \Delta'$ such that

$$rm(K_{X'} + \Delta'^+ + \beta N') \sim 0.$$

Since $(X', \Delta' + \beta N')$ is exceptional, $(X', \Delta'^+ + \beta N')$ is generalised klt, hence exceptional. Now replace B' and M with Δ'^+ and βN , respectively. Replacing p, \mathfrak{R} accordingly, from now on we can then assume that $K_{X'} + B' + M' \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$ and that M is big.

Step 6. Finally, we will use [Proposition 7.13](#) to show $K_{X'}$ has a bounded klt complement as discussed in Step 2. Let \tilde{X}' be as in Step 3, which is the result of an MMP on $-K_{X'}$. It is enough to show that $K_{\tilde{X}'}$ has a klt a -complement for some bounded number $a \in \mathbb{N}$. Since $K_{X'} + B' + M' \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$, we can replace X' with \tilde{X}' , and hence assume X' is a weak Fano. By Step 3, $K_{X'}$ has an m -complement and $|-mK_{X'}|$ defines a birational map for some bounded $m \in \mathbb{N}$. Moreover, by [Lemma 7.9](#), $\text{vol}(-K_{X'}) \leq v$ for some number v depending only on d, p, \mathfrak{R} . On the other hand, by [Lemma 7.11](#), for each $l \in \mathbb{N}$ there is a positive real number t_l depending only on d, p, l, \mathfrak{R} such that for any $L' \in |-lK_{X'}|$, the pair $(X', t_l L')$ is klt. Therefore, X' belongs to a bounded family by [Proposition 7.13](#), and this implies the existence of the required bounded klt complement for $K_{X'}$, by [Lemma 2.24](#). \square

8. Boundedness of relative complements

In this section we treat [Theorem 1.8](#) inductively. The results of [Sections 6](#) and [7](#) rely on this theorem. Proofs are similar to those in [Section 6](#).

PROPOSITION 8.1. *Assume [Theorems 1.7](#) and [1.8](#) hold in dimension $d-1$. Then [Theorem 1.8](#) holds in dimension d for those (X, B) and $X \rightarrow Z$ such that*

- $B \in \mathfrak{R}$;

- (X, Γ) is \mathbb{Q} -factorial plt for some Γ ;
- $-(K_X + \Gamma)$ is ample over Z ;
- $S := [\Gamma]$ is irreducible and it is a component of $[B]$; and
- S intersects the fibre of $X \rightarrow Z$ over z .

Proof. The proof is nearly identical to that of [Proposition 6.7](#), but for convenience we will write a complete proof because we need some slight adjustments, e.g. Step 1, and also the notation is different.

Step 1. In this step we show that the induced morphism $S \rightarrow f(S)$ is a contraction, where f denotes $X \rightarrow Z$ and $f(S)$ is the image of S with reduced structure. From the exact sequence

$$0 \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_X(-S) \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_X \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_S \rightarrow 0$$

we get the exact sequence

$$f_*\mathcal{O}_X \rightarrow f_*\mathcal{O}_S \rightarrow R^1f_*\mathcal{O}_X(-S) = 0,$$

where the vanishing follows from the relative Kawamata-Viehweg vanishing theorem [[29](#), Th. 1-2-5] as

$$-S = K_X + \Gamma - S - (K_X + \Gamma),$$

with $(X, \Gamma - S)$ being klt and $-(K_X + \Gamma)$ ample over Z . Thus $f_*\mathcal{O}_X \rightarrow f_*\mathcal{O}_S$ is surjective. Therefore, if $\pi: V \rightarrow Z$ denotes the finite part of the Stein factorisation of $S \rightarrow Z$, then

$$\mathcal{O}_Z = f_*\mathcal{O}_X \rightarrow f_*\mathcal{O}_S = \pi_*\mathcal{O}_V$$

is surjective. But $\mathcal{O}_Z \rightarrow \pi_*\mathcal{O}_V$ factors as $\mathcal{O}_Z \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{f(S)} \rightarrow \pi_*\mathcal{O}_V$. Hence $\mathcal{O}_{f(S)} \rightarrow \pi_*\mathcal{O}_V$ is surjective, which is then an isomorphism as the induced morphism $V \rightarrow f(S)$ is finite. Therefore, $V \rightarrow f(S)$ is an isomorphism and $S \rightarrow f(S)$ is a contraction.

Step 2. In this step we consider adjunction and complements on S . Consider a log resolution $\phi: X' \rightarrow X$ of (X, B) , let S' be the birational transform of S , and let $\psi: S' \rightarrow S$ be the induced morphism. By adjunction, we can write $K_S + B_S := (K_X + B)|_S$. By [Lemma 3.3](#), $B_S \in \Phi(\mathfrak{S})$ for some finite set of rational numbers $\mathfrak{S} \subset [0, 1]$ that only depends on \mathfrak{R} . Moreover, restricting $K_X + \Gamma$ to S shows that S is of Fano type over $f(S)$. In addition, $z \in f(S)$ by assumption.

Now applying [Theorem 1.8](#) in dimension $d - 1$ if $\dim f(S) > 0$, or applying [Theorem 1.7](#) in dimension $d - 1$ if $\dim f(S) = 0$, there is $n \in \mathbb{N}$ that depends only on $d - 1, \mathfrak{S}$ such that $K_S + B_S$ has an n -complement $K_S + B_S^+$ over z , with $B_S^+ \geq B_S$. Replacing n with $nI(\mathfrak{R})$ we can assume n is divisible by $I(\mathfrak{R})$. In particular, nB is integral as $B \in \mathfrak{R}$. In the subsequent steps we will lift the complement $K_S + B_S^+$ to an n -complement $K_X + B^+$ of $K_X + B$ over z , with $B^+ \geq B$.

Step 3. In this step we introduce basic notation. Write

$$N' := -(K_{X'} + B') := -\phi^*(K_X + B)$$

and let $T' = \lfloor B'^{\geq 0} \rfloor$ and $\Delta' = B' - T'$. Define

$$L' := -nK_{X'} - nT' - \lfloor (n+1)\Delta' \rfloor,$$

which is an integral divisor. Note that

$$L' = n\Delta' - \lfloor (n+1)\Delta' \rfloor + nN'.$$

Now write

$$K_{X'} + \Gamma' := \phi^*(K_X + \Gamma).$$

Replacing Γ with $(1-a)\Gamma + aB$ for some $a \in (0, 1)$ sufficiently close to 1, we can assume $B' - \Gamma'$ has sufficiently small (positive or negative) coefficients.

Step 4. In this step we define a divisor P' and study its properties. Let P' be the unique integral divisor so that

$$\Lambda' := \Gamma' + n\Delta' - \lfloor (n+1)\Delta' \rfloor + P'$$

is a boundary, (X', Λ') is plt, and $\lfloor \Lambda' \rfloor = S'$. (In particular, we are assuming $\Lambda' \geq 0$.) More precisely, we let $\mu_{S'}P' = 0$, and for each prime divisor $D' \neq S'$, we let

$$\mu_{D'}P' = -\mu_{D'} \lfloor \Gamma' + n\Delta' - \lfloor (n+1)\Delta' \rfloor \rfloor,$$

which satisfies

$$\mu_{D'}P' = -\mu_{D'} \lfloor \Gamma' - \Delta' + \langle (n+1)\Delta' \rangle \rfloor,$$

where $\langle (n+1)\Delta' \rangle$ is the fractional part of $(n+1)\Delta'$. This implies $0 \leq \mu_{D'}P' \leq 1$ for any prime divisor D' : indeed we can assume $D' \neq S'$; if D' is a component of T' , then D' is not a component of Δ' but $\mu_{D'}\Gamma' \in (0, 1)$, hence $\mu_{D'}P' = 0$; if D' is not a component of T' , then $\mu_{D'}(\Gamma' - \Delta') = \mu_{D'}(\Gamma' - B')$ is sufficiently small, hence $0 \leq \mu_{D'}P' \leq 1$.

We show P' is exceptional/ X . Assume D' is a component of P' that is not exceptional/ X . Then $D' \neq S'$, and since nB is integral, $\mu_{D'}n\Delta'$ is integral. Hence $\mu_{D'} \lfloor (n+1)\Delta' \rfloor = \mu_{D'}n\Delta'$, which implies $\mu_{D'}P' = -\mu_{D'} \lfloor \Gamma' \rfloor = 0$, a contradiction.

Step 5. In this step we use Kawamata-Viehweg vanishing to lift sections from S' to X' . Let $A := -(K_X + \Gamma)$, and let $A' = \phi^*A$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} L' + P' &= n\Delta' - \lfloor (n+1)\Delta' \rfloor + nN' + P' \\ &= K_{X'} + \Gamma' + A' + n\Delta' - \lfloor (n+1)\Delta' \rfloor + nN' + P' \\ &= K_{X'} + \Lambda' + A' + nN'. \end{aligned}$$

Shrinking Z around z we can assume Z is affine. Now since $A' + nN'$ is nef and big over Z and $(X', \Lambda' - S')$ is klt, we get $h^1(L' + P' - S') = 0$ by the relative Kawamata-Viehweg vanishing theorem [29, Th. 1-2-5]. Hence

$$H^0(L' + P') \rightarrow H^0((L' + P')|_{S'})$$

is surjective.

Step 6. In this step we define several divisors. Let $R_S := B_S^+ - B_S$. Then, perhaps after shrinking Z around z , we have

$$-n(K_S + B_S) = -n(K_S + B_S^+ + B_S - B_S^+) \sim -n(B_S - B_S^+) = nR_S \geq 0.$$

Letting $R_{S'}$ be the pullback of R_S we get

$$-n(K_{S'} + B_{S'}) := -n\psi^*(K_S + B_S) \sim nR_{S'} \geq 0.$$

Then

$$nN'|_{S'} = -n(K_{X'} + B')|_{S'} = -n(K_{S'} + B_{S'}) \sim nR_{S'}.$$

By construction,

$$\begin{aligned} (L' + P')|_{S'} &= (n\Delta' - \lfloor (n+1)\Delta' \rfloor + nN' + P')|_{S'} \\ &\sim G_{S'} := nR_{S'} + n\Delta_{S'} - \lfloor (n+1)\Delta_{S'} \rfloor + P_{S'}, \end{aligned}$$

where $\Delta_{S'} = \Delta'|_{S'}$ and $P_{S'} = P'|_{S'}$.

Step 7. In this step we show that $G_{S'} \geq 0$ and that it lifts to some effective divisor G' on X' . Assume C' is a component of $G_{S'}$ with negative coefficient. Then there is a component D' of $n\Delta' - \lfloor (n+1)\Delta' \rfloor$ with negative coefficient such that C' is a component of $D'|_{S'}$. But

$$\begin{aligned} \mu_{C'}(n\Delta_{S'} - \lfloor (n+1)\Delta_{S'} \rfloor) &= \mu_{C'}(-\Delta_{S'} + \langle (n+1)\Delta_{S'} \rangle) \\ &\geq -\mu_{C'}\Delta_{S'} = -\mu_{D'}\Delta' > -1, \end{aligned}$$

which gives $\mu_{C'}G_{S'} > -1$, and this in turn implies $\mu_{C'}G_{S'} \geq 0$ because $G_{S'}$ is integral, a contradiction. Therefore $G_{S'} \geq 0$, and by Step 5, $L' + P' \sim G'$ for some effective divisor G' whose support does not contain S' and $G'|_{S'} = G_{S'}$.

Step 8. In this step we introduce B^+ . By the previous step and the definition of L' and the fact that P' is exceptional/ X , we have

$$-nK_X - nT - \lfloor (n+1)\Delta \rfloor = L = L + P \sim G \geq 0,$$

where L , etc., are the pushdowns of L' , etc. Since nB is integral, $\lfloor (n+1)\Delta \rfloor = n\Delta$, so

$$-n(K_X + B) = -nK_X - nT - n\Delta = L \sim nR := G \geq 0.$$

Let $B^+ = B + R$. Then $n(K_X + B^+) \sim 0$.

Step 9. In this step we show that (X, B^+) is lc over some neighbourhood of z , which implies that $K_X + B^+$ is an n -complement of $K_X + B$ with $B^+ \geq B$. First we show $R|_S = R_S$. Since

$$nR' := G' - P' + \lfloor (n+1)\Delta' \rfloor - n\Delta' \sim L' + \lfloor (n+1)\Delta' \rfloor - n\Delta' = nN' \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0/X$$

and since $\lfloor (n+1)\Delta \rfloor - n\Delta = 0$ as $n\Delta$ is integral, we get that $\phi_* nR' = G = nR$ and that R' is the pullback of R . Now

$$\begin{aligned} nR_{S'} &= G_{S'} - P_{S'} + \lfloor (n+1)\Delta_{S'} \rfloor - n\Delta_{S'} \\ &= (G' - P' + \lfloor (n+1)\Delta' \rfloor - n\Delta')|_{S'} = nR'|_{S'}, \end{aligned}$$

which means $R_{S'} = R'|_{S'}$, hence $R_S = R|_S$.

The previous line implies

$$K_S + B_S^+ = K_S + B_S + R_S = (K_X + B + R)|_S = (K_X + B^+)|_S.$$

By inversion of adjunction ([Lemma 3.2](#) or the usual version in [24]), (X, B^+) is lc near S . Let

$$\Omega := aB^+ + (1-a)\Gamma$$

for some $a \in (0, 1)$ close to 1. If (X, B^+) is not lc near the fibre over z , then (X, Ω) is also not lc near the fibre over z . Note that (X, Ω) is lc near S . But then

$$-(K_X + \Omega) = -a(K_X + B^+) - (1-a)(K_X + \Gamma)$$

is ample over Z and the non-klt locus of (X, Ω) near the fibre over z has at least two disjoint components one of which is S . This contradicts the connectedness principle ([Lemma 2.14](#) or the usual version [30, Th. 17.4]). Therefore, (X, B^+) is lc over some neighbourhood of z . \square

PROPOSITION 8.2. *Assume [Theorems 1.7](#) and [1.8](#) hold in dimension $d-1$. Then [Theorem 1.8](#) holds in dimension d .*

Proof. When (X, B) is klt and $-(K_X + B)$ is nef and big over Z , the theorem is essentially [39, Th. 3.1]. Apart from Steps 1 and 2, the proof below is similar to that of [Proposition 6.8](#).

Step 1. In this step we reduce to the situation in which $\lfloor B \rfloor$ has a vertical component intersecting the fibre over z . Pick an effective Cartier divisor N on Z passing through z . Let t be the lc threshold of f^*N with respect to (X, B) over z , where f denotes $X \rightarrow Z$. Let $\Omega = B + tf^*N$. Shrinking Z we can assume (X, Ω) is lc everywhere. Let (X', Ω') be a \mathbb{Q} -factorial dlt model of (X, Ω) . Then X' is of Fano type over Z . Moreover, there is a boundary $\Delta' \leq \Omega'$ such that $\Delta' \in \Phi(\mathfrak{R})$, some component of $\lfloor \Delta' \rfloor$ is vertical over Z intersecting the fibre over z , and $B \leq \Delta$, where Δ is the pushdown of Δ' .

Run an MMP/ Z on $-(K_{X'} + \Delta')$, and let X'' be the resulting model. Since

$$-(K_{X'} + \Delta') = -(K_{X'} + \Omega') + (\Omega' - \Delta')$$

where $-(K_{X'} + \Omega')$ is nef/ Z and $\Omega' - \Delta' \geq 0$, the MMP ends with a minimal model, that is, $-(K_{X''} + \Delta'')$ is nef over Z . Moreover, if $K_{X''} + \Delta''$ has an n -complement $K_{X''} + \Delta''^+$ over z with $\Delta''^+ \geq \Delta''$, then $K_{X'} + \Delta'$ has an n -complement $K_{X'} + \Delta'^+$ over z with $\Delta'^+ \geq \Delta'$, which in turn implies $K_X + B$ also has an n -complement $K_X + B^+$ over z with $B^+ \geq B$. Since $-(K_{X'} + \Omega')$ is semi-ample over Z , (X'', Ω'') is lc, and hence (X'', Δ'') is lc. In particular, no component of $[\Delta']$ is contracted by the MMP. Otherwise $a(S', X'', \Delta'') < 0$ for any contracted component S' of $[\Delta']$, contradicting the previous sentence. Replacing (X, B) with (X'', Δ'') we can assume that $[B]$ has a component intersecting the fibre over z and that X is \mathbb{Q} -factorial.

Step 2. In this step we reduce to the case $B \in \mathfrak{R}$. Let $\epsilon > 0$ be a sufficiently small number. Let Θ be the boundary whose coefficients are the same as B except that we replace each coefficient in $(1 - \epsilon, 1)$ with 1. Run an MMP/ Z on $-(K_X + \Theta)$, and let X' be the resulting model. By [Proposition 2.50](#), we can choose ϵ depending only on d, \mathfrak{R} so that no component of $[\Theta]$ is contracted by the MMP, (X', Θ') is lc, and that $-(K_{X'} + \Theta')$ is nef over Z . Moreover, the coefficients of Θ' belong to some fixed finite set depending only on \mathfrak{R}, ϵ because 1 is the only accumulation point of $\Phi(\mathfrak{R})$.

If $K_{X'} + \Theta'$ has an n -complement $K_{X'} + \Theta'^+$ over z with $\Theta'^+ \geq \Theta'$, then $K_X + \Theta$ has an n -complement $K_X + \Theta^+$ over z with $\Theta^+ \geq \Theta$, which in turn implies $K_X + B$ also has an n -complement $K_X + B^+$ over z with $B^+ \geq B$. Replacing (X, B) with (X', Θ') and extending \mathfrak{R} , from now on we can assume $B \in \mathfrak{R}$. In the following steps we try to mimic the arguments of the proof of [Proposition 6.8](#).

Step 3. In this step we define a boundary Δ . Since X is of Fano type over Z , $-K_X$ is big over Z . So since $-(K_X + B)$ is nef over Z ,

$$-(K_X + \alpha B) = -\alpha(K_X + B) - (1 - \alpha)K_X$$

is big over Z for any $\alpha \in (0, 1)$. We will assume α is sufficiently close to 1. Define a boundary Δ as follows. Let D be a prime divisor. If D is vertical over Z , let $\mu_D \Delta = \mu_D B$, but if D is horizontal over Z , let $\mu_D \Delta = \mu_D \alpha B$. Then (X, Δ) is lc, $\alpha B \leq \Delta \leq B$, $[\Delta]$ has a vertical component intersecting the fibre over z , and $-(K_X + \Delta)$ is big over Z as $\Delta = \alpha B$ near the generic fibre.

Step 4. In this step we introduce a boundary $\tilde{\Delta} \leq \Delta$ and reduce to the case when $-(K_X + \Delta)$ and $-(K_X + \tilde{\Delta})$ are nef and big over Z , some component of $[\Delta]$ intersects the fibre over z , and where $(X, \tilde{\Delta})$ is klt. Let $X \rightarrow V/Z$ be the contraction defined by $-(K_X + B)$. Run an MMP on $-(K_X + \Delta)$ over V ,

and let X' be the resulting model. Then $-(K_{X'} + \Delta')$ is nef and big over V but may not be nef over Z . However, after replacing Δ with $aB + (1-a)\Delta$ for some $a \in (0, 1)$ sufficiently close to 1 (i.e., increasing α to get closer to 1) we can assume $-(K_{X'} + \Delta')$ is nef and big over Z . The MMP does not contract any component of $\lfloor \Delta \rfloor$. Now replace (X, B) with (X', B') and replace Δ with Δ' so that we can assume $-(K_X + \Delta)$ is nef and big over Z . Let $X \rightarrow T/Z$ be the contraction defined by $-(K_X + \Delta)$.

Let $\tilde{\Delta} = \beta\Delta$ for some $\beta < 1$. After running an MMP on $-(K_X + \tilde{\Delta})$ over T we can assume $-(K_X + \tilde{\Delta})$ is nef and big over T , hence also nef and big over Z if we replace β with a number sufficiently close to 1. The MMP may contract the components of $\lfloor \Delta \rfloor$, but after replacing (X, B) with a suitable \mathbb{Q} -factorial dlt model, increasing α, β , and replacing $K_X + \Delta$ and $K_X + \tilde{\Delta}$ with their pullbacks, we can assume that (X, B) is \mathbb{Q} -factorial dlt and that there are boundaries $\tilde{\Delta} \leq \Delta \leq B$ so that $-(K_X + \Delta)$ and $-(K_X + \tilde{\Delta})$ are nef and big over Z , some component of $\lfloor \Delta \rfloor$ intersects the fibre over z , and that $(X, \tilde{\Delta})$ is klt. Shrinking Z around z we can assume every component of $\lfloor \Delta \rfloor$ intersects the fibre over z .

Step 5. In this step we introduce divisors A, G and yet another boundary Γ . We can write $-(K_X + \Delta) \sim_{\mathbb{R}} A + G/Z$, where $A \geq 0$ is ample and $G \geq 0$. Assume $\text{Supp } G$ does not contain any non-klt centre of (X, Δ) . Then $(X, \Delta + \delta G)$ is dlt for any sufficiently small $\delta > 0$. Moreover,

$$-(K_X + \Delta + \delta G) \sim_{\mathbb{R}} (1 - \delta) \left(\frac{\delta}{1 - \delta} A + A + G \right) / Z$$

is ample over Z . Hence by perturbing the coefficients of $\Delta + \delta G$ we can find a boundary Γ such that (X, Γ) is plt, $S := \lfloor \Gamma \rfloor \subseteq \lfloor B \rfloor$ is irreducible intersecting the fibre over z , and $-(K_X + \Gamma)$ is ample over Z . So we can apply [Proposition 8.1](#). From now on we assume $\text{Supp } G$ contains some non-klt centre of (X, Δ) .

Step 6. In this step we define another boundary Ω . Let t be the lc threshold of $G + \Delta - \tilde{\Delta}$ with respect to $(X, \tilde{\Delta})$ over z . Replacing $\tilde{\Delta}$ we can assume that $\Delta - \tilde{\Delta}$ is sufficiently small, and hence t is sufficiently small too. Then letting $\Omega = \tilde{\Delta} + t(G + \Delta - \tilde{\Delta})$, any non-klt place of (X, Ω) is a non-klt place of (X, Δ) . (This can be seen on a log resolution of $(X, B + \Omega)$.) By construction, over Z we have

$$\begin{aligned} -(K_X + \Omega) &= -(K_X + \tilde{\Delta} + t(G + \Delta - \tilde{\Delta})) \\ &= -(K_X + \Delta) + \Delta - \tilde{\Delta} - t(G + \Delta - \tilde{\Delta}) \\ &\sim_{\mathbb{R}} A + G - tG + (1 - t)(\Delta - \tilde{\Delta}) \\ &= (1 - t) \left(\frac{t}{1 - t} A + A + G + \Delta - \tilde{\Delta} \right), \end{aligned}$$

which implies $-(K_X + \Omega)$ is ample over Z because

$$-(K_X + \tilde{\Delta}) = -(K_X + \Delta) + \Delta - \tilde{\Delta} \sim_{\mathbb{R}} A + G + \Delta - \tilde{\Delta}/Z$$

is nef and big over Z .

Step 7. In this step we finish the proof of the proposition using 8.1. If $[\Omega] \neq 0$, then there is a component S of $[\Omega] \leq [\Delta] \leq [B]$ and there is a boundary Γ so that (X, Γ) is plt, $S = [\Gamma]$ intersects the fibre over z , and $-(K_X + \Gamma)$ is ample over Z . So we can apply Proposition 8.1.

Now assume $[\Omega] = 0$. Let (X', Ω') be a \mathbb{Q} -factorial dlt model of (X, Ω) . Shrinking Z we can assume every component of $[\Omega']$ intersects the fibre over z . Running an MMP on $K_{X'} + [\Omega']$ over X ends with X because $[\Omega']$ is the reduced exceptional divisor of $X' \rightarrow X$ and because X is \mathbb{Q} -factorial klt. The last step of the MMP is a divisorial contraction $X'' \rightarrow X$ contracting one prime divisor S'' , and (X'', S'') is plt and $-(K_{X''} + S'')$ is ample over X . Moreover, if we denote the pullbacks of $K_X + \Omega$ and $K_X + \Delta$ to X'' by $K_{X''} + \Omega''$ and $K_{X''} + \Delta''$, respectively, then S'' is a component of both $[\Omega'']$ and $[\Delta'']$. Now since $-(K_X + \Omega)$ is ample over Z and $-(K_{X''} + S'')$ is ample over X , we can find a boundary Γ'' so that (X'', Γ'') is plt, $S'' = [\Gamma'']$ intersects the fibre over z , and $-(K_{X''} + \Gamma'')$ is ample over Z . In addition, if $K_{X'} + B''$ is the pullback of $K_X + B$, then S'' is a component of $[B'']$ since $\Delta'' \leq B''$. Now apply Proposition 8.1 to get an n -complement $K_{X''} + B''^+$ of $K_{X''} + B''$ over z with $B''^+ \geq B''$ for some bounded $n \in \mathbb{N}$. This gives an n -complement $K_X + B^+$ of $K_X + B$ over z with $B^+ \geq B$. \square

9. Anti-canonical volume

In this section we prove Theorem 1.6, which claims that the anti-canonical volumes of ϵ -lc Fano varieties of a given dimension are bounded. Recall that we treated this boundedness for exceptional Fano varieties in 7.5. To deal with the non-exceptional case we need Conjecture 1.5 in lower dimension. We will also use Theorem 1.2. Although 1.2 will be proved later in the final section, but this is not a problem because no result of this paper relies on Theorem 1.6. However, 1.6 is an important ingredient of the proof of BAB in [6].

Proof of Theorem 1.6. We give a short summary of the proof. It is easy to derive the second claim of the theorem (birational boundedness) to the first claim, which is the existence of v . Now if $\text{vol}(-K_X)$ is too large, we find $0 \leq B \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} -aK_X$ with $a > 0$ too small but with $\text{vol}(B) > (2d)^d$ and (X, B) exactly ϵ' -lc for some $\epsilon' \in (0, \epsilon)$. We extract a prime divisor D' with $a(D', X, B) = \epsilon'$, say via $X' \rightarrow X$, run MMP on $-D'$ giving a Mori fibre space $X'' \rightarrow Z$ and $K_{X''} + sD'' \equiv 0/Z$ where s is too large. The case $\dim Z > 0$ is settled by induction and restriction to the fibres of $X'' \rightarrow Z$. To treat the case

$\dim Z = 0$ we create a covering family of non-klt centres (similar to the proof of Proposition 5.1) and use adjunction on these centres and BAB (Conjecture 1.5) in lower dimension to get a contradiction.

Step 1. In this step we reduce the theorem to existence of v and introduce basic notation. The birational boundedness claim follows from existence of v and Theorem 1.2. Indeed then there is $m \in \mathbb{N}$ depending only on d, ϵ such that $| -mK_X |$ defines a birational map, and $\text{vol}(-mK_X)$ is bounded from above, so we can apply Proposition 4.4 by taking some $0 \leq M \sim -mK_X$. Moreover, we can assume X is Fano by taking the contraction $X \rightarrow \tilde{X}$ defined by $-K_X$ and by replacing X with \tilde{X} .

If there is no v as in the statement, then there is a sequence X_i of ϵ -lc Fano varieties of dimension d such that $\text{vol}(-K_{X_i})$ is an increasing sequence approaching ∞ . We will derive a contradiction. Fix $\epsilon' \in (0, \epsilon)$. Then there exist a decreasing sequence of rational numbers a_i approaching 0, and \mathbb{Q} -boundaries $B_i \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} -a_i K_{X_i}$ such that $(2d)^d < \text{vol}(B_i)$ and (X_i, B_i) is ϵ' -lc but not ϵ'' -lc for any $\epsilon'' > \epsilon'$. We can assume $a_i < 1$. Hence $-(K_{X_i} + B_i) \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} -(1 - a_i)K_{X_i}$ is ample.

For each i , there is a prime divisor D'_i on birational models of X_i such that $a(D'_i, X_i, B_i) = \epsilon'$. If D'_i is a divisor on X_i , then we let $\phi_i: X'_i \rightarrow X_i$ be a small \mathbb{Q} -factorialisation. Otherwise we let it be a birational contraction that extracts only D'_i with X'_i being \mathbb{Q} -factorial [8, Cor. 1.4.3]. Let

$$K_{X'_i} + e_i D'_i = \phi_i^* K_{X_i} \text{ and } K_{X'_i} + B'_i = \phi_i^*(K_{X_i} + B_i).$$

Then $e_i \leq 1 - \epsilon$, but $\mu_{D'_i} B'_i = 1 - \epsilon'$. Therefore, the coefficient of D'_i in

$$P'_i := \phi_i^* B_i = B'_i - e_i D'_i$$

is at least $\epsilon - \epsilon'$.

Step 2. In this step we obtain Mori fibre spaces $X''_i \rightarrow Z_i$ and numbers s_i . Let H_i be a general ample \mathbb{Q} -divisor so that $K_{X_i} + B_i + H_i \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$ and $(X_i, B_i + H_i)$ is ϵ' -lc, and let H'_i be its pullback to X'_i . Run an MMP on $-D'_i$ that ends with a $-D'_i$ -Mori fibre space, that is, an extremal non-birational contraction $X''_i \rightarrow Z_i$ where D''_i , the pushdown of D'_i , is ample over Z_i . Letting $b_i = \frac{1}{a_i} - 1$ we get

$$b_i B_i = \frac{1}{a_i} B_i - B_i \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} -K_{X_i} - B_i \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} H_i,$$

and the b_i form an increasing sequence approaching ∞ . In particular, $K_{X_i} + B_i + b_i B_i \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$. Thus

$$K_{X'_i} + B'_i + b_i P'_i = K_{X'_i} + B'_i + b_i \phi_i^* B_i \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} K_{X'_i} + B'_i + H'_i \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0,$$

which gives

$$K_{X''_i} + B''_i + b_i P''_i \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} K_{X''_i} + B''_i + H''_i \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0,$$

where B_i'' denotes the pushdown of B_i' , etc. Moreover, $\mu_{D_i''} b_i P_i'' \geq b_i(\epsilon - \epsilon')$. So there is a number $s_i \geq b_i(\epsilon - \epsilon')$ so that $K_{X_i''} + s_i D_i'' \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0/Z_i$. In particular, $\lim s_i = \infty$.

Step 3. In this step we treat the case $\dim Z_i > 0$ and modify the setting when $\dim Z_i = 0$. Assume $\dim Z_i > 0$ for every i , and let V_i be a general fibre of $X_i'' \rightarrow Z_i$. By the previous step, $(X_i'', B_i'' + H_i'')$ is ϵ' -lc, hence X_i'' is ϵ' -lc, which implies V_i is an ϵ' -lc Fano variety. Since we are assuming [Conjecture 1.5](#) in dimension $\leq d - 1$, V_i belongs to a bounded family. Restricting $K_{X_i''} + s_i D_i''$ to V_i we get $K_{V_i} + s_i D_{V_i} \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$, where $D_{V_i} = D_i''|_{V_i}$. This contradicts [Lemma 2.22](#). From now on we can assume $\dim Z_i = 0$ for every i .

By construction,

$$\text{vol}(-K_{X_i''}) \geq \text{vol}(b_i P_i'') \geq \text{vol}(b_i P_i') = \text{vol}(b_i B_i) > (2b_i d)^d.$$

Replacing ϵ with ϵ' and replacing X_i with X_i'' we can assume there is a prime divisor D_i on X_i such that $K_{X_i} + s_i D_i \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$ and that the s_i form an increasing sequence approaching ∞ .

Step 4. In this step we fix i , create a family of non-klt centres on X_i , and consider adjunction. [By 2.31\(2\)](#), there is a covering family of subvarieties of X_i such that for any pair of general closed points $x_i, y_i \in X_i$, there exist a member G_i of the family and a \mathbb{Q} -divisor $0 \leq \Delta_i \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} -a_i K_{X_i}$ so that (X_i, Δ_i) is lc at x_i with a unique non-klt place whose centre contains x_i , that centre is G_i , and (X_i, Δ_i) is not klt at y_i . As $-(K_{X_i} + \Delta_i)$ is ample, $\dim G_i \neq 0$ by the connectedness principle.

Let F_i be the normalisation of G_i . [By Construction 3.9](#) and [Theorem 3.10](#) (by taking $B = 0$ and $\Delta = \Delta_i$) and the ACC for lc thresholds [[18](#), Th. 1.1], there is a \mathbb{Q} -boundary Θ_{F_i} with coefficients in a fixed DCC set Φ depending only on d such that we can write

$$(K_{X_i} + \Delta_i)|_{F_i} \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} K_{F_i} + \Delta_{F_i} := K_{F_i} + \Theta_{F_i} + P_{F_i},$$

where P_{F_i} is pseudo-effective. Increasing a_i and adding to Δ_i we can assume P_{F_i} is big and effective.

Let $D_{F_i} := D_i|_{F_i}$. Since G_i is general, it is not contained in $\text{Supp } D_i$. [By Lemma 3.11](#), each component of D_{F_i} has coefficient at least 1 in $\Theta_{F_i} + D_{F_i}$. Replacing Δ_i with $\Delta_i + D_i$ and replacing P_{F_i} with $P_{F_i} + D_{F_i}$, we can assume each component of D_{F_i} has coefficient at least 1 in Δ_{F_i} . Note that we also need to replace a_i with $a_i + \frac{1}{s_i}$, which we still can assume to form a decreasing sequence approaching 0.

Step 5. Let $F_i' \rightarrow F_i$ be a log resolution of (F_i, Δ_{F_i}) . In this step we define a boundary $\Sigma_{F_i'}$. Pick a rational number $\epsilon' \in (0, \epsilon)$. By construction, (F_i, Δ_{F_i}) is not ϵ' -lc. Define a boundary $\Sigma_{F_i'}$ on F_i' as follows. Let S_i be a prime divisor

and let w_i be its coefficient in $\Delta_{F'_i}$ where $K_{F'_i} + \Delta_{F'_i}$ is the pullback of $K_{F_i} + \Delta_{F_i}$. If $w_i \leq 0$, then let the coefficient of S_i in $\Sigma_{F'_i}$ be zero. But if $w_i > 0$, then let the coefficient of S_i in $\Sigma_{F'_i}$ be the minimum of w_i and $1 - \epsilon'$. Then we can write

$$\Sigma_{F'_i} = \Delta_{F'_i} + E_{F'_i} - N_{F'_i},$$

where $E_{F'_i}, N_{F'_i}$ are effective with no common components, $E_{F'_i}$ is exceptional over F_i , each component of $N_{F'_i}$ has coefficient $> 1 - \epsilon'$ in $\Delta_{F'_i}$, and $N_{F'_i} \neq 0$. Note that $(F'_i, \Sigma_{F'_i})$ is ϵ' -lc.

Step 6. In this step we consider a birational model F''_i from which we obtain a Mori fibre space $\tilde{F}_i \rightarrow T_i$. Let $(F''_i, \Sigma_{F''_i})$ be a log minimal model of $(F'_i, \Sigma_{F'_i})$ over F_i . By construction,

$$K_{F''_i} + \Sigma_{F''_i} = K_{F'_i} + \Delta_{F'_i} + E_{F''_i} - N_{F''_i} \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} E_{F''_i} - N_{F''_i} / F_i.$$

So by the negativity lemma, $E_{F''_i} = 0$, hence $\Delta_{F''_i} = \Sigma_{F''_i} + N_{F''_i} \geq 0$. Moreover, $N_{F''_i} \neq 0$ because the birational transform of each component of D_{F_i} is a component of $N_{F''_i}$.

Since $-(K_{X_i} + \Delta_i)$ is ample, $-(K_{F_i} + \Delta_{F_i})$ is ample, and hence $-(K_{F''_i} + \Delta_{F''_i})$ is semi-ample. Let $0 \leq L_{F''_i} \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} -(K_{F''_i} + \Delta_{F''_i})$ be general with coefficients $\leq 1 - \epsilon'$. Then $(F''_i, \Sigma_{F''_i} + L_{F''_i})$ is ϵ' -lc as $(F'_i, \Sigma_{F'_i})$ is ϵ' -lc. Moreover, since $E_{F''_i} = 0$, we have

$$K_{F''_i} + \Sigma_{F''_i} + L_{F''_i} + N_{F''_i} = K_{F'_i} + \Delta_{F'_i} - N_{F''_i} + L_{F''_i} + N_{F''_i} \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0.$$

Thus running an MMP on $K_{F''_i} + \Sigma_{F''_i} + L_{F''_i}$ ends with a Mori fibre space $\tilde{F}_i \rightarrow T_i$. As we are assuming [Conjecture 1.5](#) in dimension $\leq d - 1$, the general fibres of $\tilde{F}_i \rightarrow T_i$ are bounded because $K_{\tilde{F}_i}$ is ϵ' -lc and anti-ample over T_i .

Step 7. In this step we define Λ_{F_i} and study $\Delta_{F_i} - \Lambda_{F_i}$. By [Lemma 3.12](#), we can write $K_{F_i} + \Lambda_{F_i} = K_{X_i}|_{F_i}$, where (F_i, Λ_{F_i}) is sub- ϵ -lc and

$$\Delta_{F_i} - \Lambda_{F_i} \geq \Theta_{F_i} - \Lambda_{F_i} \geq 0.$$

Moreover,

$$\Delta_{F_i} - \Lambda_{F_i} = K_{F_i} + \Delta_{F_i} - K_{F_i} - \Lambda_{F_i} \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} (K_{X_i} + \Delta_i)|_{F_i} - K_{X_i}|_{F_i} = \Delta_i|_{F_i}.$$

Let $K_{F''_i} + \Lambda_{F''_i}$ be the pullback of $K_{F_i} + \Lambda_{F_i}$. Then $\Delta_{F''_i} - \Lambda_{F''_i}$ is the pullback of $\Delta_{F_i} - \Lambda_{F_i}$, hence

$$\Delta_{F''_i} - \Lambda_{F''_i} \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} \Delta_i|_{F''_i} \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} a_i s_i D_{F''_i},$$

where $D_{F''_i} := D_i|_{F''_i}$.

On the other hand, by Step 6, $N_{\tilde{F}_i}$, the pushdown of $N_{F''_i}$, is ample over T_i . Let \tilde{C}_i be one of its components that is ample over T_i . Let C''_i on F''_i be the birational transform of \tilde{C}_i . Since C''_i is a component of $N_{F''_i}$, it is a component

of $\Delta_{F''_i}$ with coefficient $> 1 - \epsilon'$, which in turn implies it is a component of $\Delta_{F''_i} - \Lambda_{F''_i}$ with coefficient $> \epsilon - \epsilon'$.

Step 8. In this final step we get a contradiction by restricting to the general fibres of $\tilde{F}_i \rightarrow T_i$. Then

$$K_{X_i} + \Delta_i + s_i(1 - a_i)D_i \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0,$$

hence

$$K_{F''_i} + \Delta_{F''_i} + s_i(1 - a_i)D_{F''_i} \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0,$$

which in turn gives

$$K_{F''_i} + \Delta_{F''_i} + \frac{1 - a_i}{a_i}(\Delta_{F''_i} - \Lambda_{F''_i}) \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0$$

and then

$$K_{\tilde{F}_i} + \Delta_{\tilde{F}_i} + \frac{1 - a_i}{a_i}(\Delta_{\tilde{F}_i} - \Lambda_{\tilde{F}_i}) \sim_{\mathbb{Q}} 0.$$

But now \tilde{C}_i is a component of $\frac{1 - a_i}{a_i}(\Delta_{\tilde{F}_i} - \Lambda_{\tilde{F}_i})$ whose coefficient is at least

$$\frac{(1 - a_i)(\epsilon - \epsilon')}{a_i},$$

which approaches ∞ as i grows large. Restricting to the general fibres of $\tilde{F}_i \rightarrow T_i$ and applying [Lemma 2.22](#) gives a contradiction. \square

10. Proofs of main results

Recall that we proved [Theorem 1.4](#) in [Section 5](#) and proved [Theorem 1.6](#) in [Section 9](#). We prove the other main results by induction, so let us assume all the theorems in the introduction hold in dimension $d - 1$. They can be verified easily in dimension 1.

Proof of [Theorem 1.8](#). This follows from [Theorems 1.7](#) and [1.8](#) in dimension $d - 1$, and [Proposition 8.2](#). \square

Proof of [Corollary 1.9](#). Shrinking X around the generic point of V we can assume (X, Δ) is klt. Then X is of Fano type over itself. Thus by [Theorem 1.8](#) in dimension d , $K_X + B$ has an n -complement $K_X + B^+$ near the generic point v of V for some n depending only on d and \mathfrak{R} such that $B^+ \geq B$. Since V is an lc centre of (X, B) , we deduce that $B^+ = B$ near v which, in particular, means $n(K_X + B)$ is Cartier near v . \square

Proof of [Theorem 1.3](#). This follows from [Theorem 1.10](#) in dimension $\leq d - 1$, [Theorem 1.8](#) in dimension d , and [Lemma 7.5](#). \square

Proof of [Theorem 1.11](#). This follows from [Theorem 1.10](#) in dimension $\leq d - 1$, [Theorem 1.8](#) in dimension d , and [Proposition 7.15](#). \square

Proof of Theorem 1.10. This follows from Theorems 1.8 and 1.11 in dimension d , and Proposition 6.13. \square

Proof of Theorem 1.7. This is a special case of Theorem 1.10. \square

Proof of Theorem 1.1. This is a consequence of Theorem 1.7. \square

Proof of Theorem 1.2. This follows from Theorem 1.1 and Proposition 4.9. \square

References

- [1] V. ALEXEEV, Boundedness and K^2 for log surfaces, *Internat. J. Math.* **5** no. 6 (1994), 779–810. MR 1298994. Zbl 0838.14028. <https://doi.org/10.1142/S0129167X94000395>.
- [2] V. A. ALEXEEV and M. BRION, Boundedness of spherical Fano varieties, in *The Fano Conference*, Univ. Torino, Turin, 2004, pp. 69–80. MR 2112568. Zbl 1087.14028.
- [3] F. AMBRO, *The Adjunction Conjecture and its Applications*, ProQuest LLC, Ann Arbor, MI, 1999, Thesis (Ph.D.)—The Johns Hopkins University. MR 2698988. Available at http://gateway.proquest.com/openurl?url_ver=Z39.88-2004&rft_val_fmt=info:ofi/fmt:kev:mtx:dissertation&res_dat=xri:pqdiss&rft_dat=xri:pqdiss:9927021.
- [4] F. AMBRO, The moduli b -divisor of an lc-trivial fibration, *Compos. Math.* **141** no. 2 (2005), 385–403. MR 2134273. Zbl 1094.14025. <https://doi.org/10.1112/S0010437X04001071>.
- [5] C. BIRKAR, Existence of log canonical flips and a special LMMP, *Publ. Math. Inst. Hautes Études Sci.* **115** (2012), 325–368. MR 2929730. Zbl 1256.14012. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s10240-012-0039-5>.
- [6] C. BIRKAR, Singularities of linear systems and boundedness of Fano varieties, 2016. arXiv 1609.05543.
- [7] C. BIRKAR, Singularities on the base of a Fano type fibration, *J. Reine Angew. Math.* **715** (2016), 125–142. MR 3507921. Zbl 1348.14037. <https://doi.org/10.1515/crelle-2014-0033>.
- [8] C. BIRKAR, P. CASCINI, C. D. HACON, and J. MCKERNAN, Existence of minimal models for varieties of log general type, *J. Amer. Math. Soc.* **23** no. 2 (2010), 405–468. MR 2601039. Zbl 1210.14019. <https://doi.org/10.1090/S0894-0347-09-00649-3>.
- [9] C. BIRKAR and D.-Q. ZHANG, Effectivity of Iitaka fibrations and pluricanonical systems of polarized pairs, *Publ. Math. Inst. Hautes Études Sci.* **123** (2016), 283–331. MR 3502099. Zbl 1348.14038. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s10240-016-0080-x>.
- [10] A. A. BORISOV, Boundedness of Fano threefolds with log-terminal singularities of given index, *J. Math. Sci. Univ. Tokyo* **8** no. 2 (2001), 329–342. MR 1837167. Zbl 1073.14539. Available at <http://www.ms.u-tokyo.ac.jp/journal/pdf/jms080208.pdf>.

- [11] A. A. BORISOV and L. A. BORISOV, Singular toric Fano three-folds, *Mat. Sb.* **183** no. 2 (1992), 134–141. MR 1166957. Zbl 0786.14028. <https://doi.org/10.1070/SM1993v075n01ABEH003385>.
- [12] D. EISENBUD and J. HARRIS, On varieties of minimal degree (a centennial account), in *Algebraic Geometry, Bowdoin*, 1985 (Brunswick, Maine, 1985), *Proc. Sympos. Pure Math.* **46**, Amer. Math. Soc., Providence, RI, 1987, pp. 3–13. MR 0927946. Zbl 0646.14036. <https://doi.org/10.1090/pspum/046.1/927946>.
- [13] O. FUJINO and Y. GONGYO, On the moduli b-divisors of lc-trivial fibrations, *Ann. Inst. Fourier (Grenoble)* **64** no. 4 (2014), 1721–1735. MR 3329677. Zbl 1314.14030. <https://doi.org/10.5802/aif.2894>.
- [14] Y. GONGYO, On the minimal model theory for dlt pairs of numerical log Kodaira dimension zero, *Math. Res. Lett.* **18** no. 5 (2011), 991–1000. MR 2875871. Zbl 1246.14026. <https://doi.org/10.4310/MRL.2011.v18.n5.a16>.
- [15] C. D. HACON and J. MCKERNAN, Boundedness of pluricanonical maps of varieties of general type, *Invent. Math.* **166** no. 1 (2006), 1–25. MR 2242631. Zbl 1121.14011. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s00222-006-0504-1>.
- [16] C. D. HACON and J. MCKERNAN, On Shokurov’s rational connectedness conjecture, *Duke Math. J.* **138** no. 1 (2007), 119–136. MR 2309156. Zbl 1128.14028. <https://doi.org/10.1215/S0012-7094-07-13813-4>.
- [17] C. D. HACON, J. MCKERNAN, and C. XU, On the birational automorphisms of varieties of general type, *Ann. of Math. (2)* **177** no. 3 (2013), 1077–1111. MR 3034294. Zbl 1281.14036. <https://doi.org/10.4007/annals.2013.177.3.6>.
- [18] C. D. HACON, J. MCKERNAN, and C. XU, ACC for log canonical thresholds, *Ann. of Math. (2)* **180** no. 2 (2014), 523–571. MR 3224718. Zbl 1320.14023. <https://doi.org/10.4007/annals.2014.180.2.3>.
- [19] C. D. HACON and C. XU, Boundedness of log Calabi-Yau pairs of Fano type, *Math. Res. Lett.* **22** no. 6 (2015), 1699–1716. MR 3507257. Zbl 1362.14018. <https://doi.org/10.4310/MRL.2015.v22.n6.a8>.
- [20] R. HARTSHORNE, *Algebraic Geometry, Grad. Texts in Math.* **52**, Springer-Verlag, New York, 1977. MR 0463157. Zbl 0367.14001. <https://doi.org/10.1007/978-1-4757-3849-0>.
- [21] V. A. ISKOVSKIKH and Y. G. PROKHOROV, Fano varieties, in *Algebraic Geometry, V, Encycl. Math. Sci.* **47**, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 1999, pp. 1–247. MR 1668579. Zbl 0912.14013.
- [22] C. JIANG, Boundedness of anti-canonical volumes of singular log Fano threefolds, 2014, *Comm. Anal. Geom.*, (to appear). arXiv 1411.6728v2.
- [23] C. JIANG, On birational boundedness of Fano fibrations, *Amer. J. Math.* **140** no. 5 (2018), 1253–1276. MR 3862064. Zbl 1404.14021. <https://doi.org/10.1353/ajm.2018.0030>.
- [24] M. KAWAKITA, Inversion of adjunction on log canonicity, *Invent. Math.* **167** no. 1 (2007), 129–133. MR 2264806. Zbl 1114.14009. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s00222-006-0008-z>.

- [25] Y. KAWAMATA, Pluricanonical systems on minimal algebraic varieties, *Invent. Math.* **79** no. 3 (1985), 567–588. MR 0782236. Zbl 0593.14010. <https://doi.org/10.1007/BF01388524>.
- [26] Y. KAWAMATA, On the length of an extremal rational curve, *Invent. Math.* **105** no. 3 (1991), 609–611. MR 1117153. Zbl 0751.14007. <https://doi.org/10.1007/BF01232281>.
- [27] Y. KAWAMATA, Boundedness of \mathbf{Q} -Fano threefolds, in *Proceedings of the International Conference on Algebra, Part 3* (Novosibirsk, 1989), *Contemp. Math.* **131**, Amer. Math. Soc., Providence, RI, 1992, pp. 439–445. MR 1175897. Zbl 0785.14024. <https://doi.org/10.1090/conm/131.3/1175897>.
- [28] Y. KAWAMATA, Subadjunction of log canonical divisors. II, *Amer. J. Math.* **120** no. 5 (1998), 893–899. MR 1646046. Zbl 0919.14003. <https://doi.org/10.1353/ajm.1998.0038>.
- [29] Y. KAWAMATA, K. MATSUDA, and K. MATSUKI, Introduction to the minimal model problem, in *Algebraic Geometry, Sendai, 1985*, *Adv. Stud. Pure Math.* **10**, North-Holland, Amsterdam, 1987, pp. 283–360. MR 0946243. Zbl 0672.14006. <https://doi.org/10.2969/aspm/01010283>.
- [30] J. KOLLÁR, *Flips and Abundance for Algebraic Threefolds*, *Astérisque* **211**, Soc. Math. de France, Paris, 1992, (with 14 co-authors; papers from the Second Summer Seminar on Algebraic Geometry held at the University of Utah, Salt Lake City, Utah, August 1991). MR 1225842. Zbl 0782.00075.
- [31] J. KOLLÁR, Effective base point freeness, *Math. Ann.* **296** no. 4 (1993), 595–605. MR 1233485. Zbl 0818.14002. <https://doi.org/10.1007/BF01445123>.
- [32] J. KOLLÁR, *Rational Curves on Algebraic Varieties*, *Ergeb. Math. Grenzgeb.* **32**, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 1996. MR 1440180. Zbl 0877.14012. <https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-662-03276-3>.
- [33] J. KOLLÁR, Singularities of pairs, in *Algebraic Geometry—Santa Cruz 1995*, *Proc. Sympos. Pure Math.* **62**, Amer. Math. Soc., Providence, RI, 1997, pp. 221–287. MR 1492525. Zbl 0905.14002.
- [34] J. KOLLÁR, Y. MIYAOKA, and S. MORI, Rational connectedness and boundedness of Fano manifolds, *J. Differential Geom.* **36** no. 3 (1992), 765–779. MR 1189503. Zbl 0759.14032. <https://doi.org/10.4310/jdg/1214453188>.
- [35] J. KOLLÁR, Y. MIYAOKA, S. MORI, and H. TAKAGI, Boundedness of canonical \mathbf{Q} -Fano 3-folds, *Proc. Japan Acad. Ser. A Math. Sci.* **76** no. 5 (2000), 73–77. MR 1771144. Zbl 0981.14016. <https://doi.org/10.3792/pjaa.76.73>.
- [36] J. KOLLÁR and S. MORI, *Birational Geometry of Algebraic Varieties*, *Cambridge Tracts in Math.* **134**, Cambridge Univ. Press, Cambridge, 1998, with the collaboration of C. H. Clemens and A. Corti; translated from the 1998 Japanese original. MR 1658959. Zbl 0926.14003. <https://doi.org/10.1017/CBO9780511662560>.
- [37] C.-J. LAI, Bounding volumes of singular Fano threefolds, *Nagoya Math. J.* **224** no. 1 (2016), 37–73. MR 3572749. Zbl 1390.14053. <https://doi.org/10.1017/nmj.2016.21>.

- [38] N. NAKAYAMA, *Zariski-Decomposition and Abundance*, *MSJ Memoirs* **14**, Math. Soc. of Japan, Tokyo, 2004. MR 2104208. Zbl 1061.14018. <https://doi.org/10.2969/msjmemoirs/014010000>.
- [39] Y. G. PROKHOROV and V. V. SHOKUROV, The first fundamental theorem on complements: from global to local, *Izv. Ross. Akad. Nauk Ser. Mat.* **65** no. 6 (2001), 99–128, translation in *Izv. Math.* **65** (2001), 1169–1196. MR 1892905. Zbl 1068.14018. <https://doi.org/10.1070/IM2001v065n06ABEH000366>.
- [40] Y. G. PROKHOROV and V. V. SHOKUROV, Towards the second main theorem on complements, *J. Algebraic Geom.* **18** no. 1 (2009), 151–199. MR 2448282. Zbl 1159.14020. <https://doi.org/10.1090/S1056-3911-08-00498-0>.
- [41] V. V. SHOKUROV, Smoothness of the general anti-canonical divisor on a fano 3-fold, *Izv. Akad. Nauk SSSR Ser. Mat.* **43** no. 2 (1979), 430–441, [(English translation in *Math. USSR Izv.* **14** (1980), 305–405). Zbl 0429.14012]. MR 0534602. Zbl 0407.14017. <https://doi.org/10.1070/IM1980v014n02ABEH001123>.
- [42] V. V. SHOKUROV, 3-fold log flips, *Russian Acad. Sci. Izv. Math.* **40** no. 1 (1993), 95–202, (with an appendix by Y. Kawamata: The minimal discrepancy of a 3-fold terminal singularity). MR 1162635. Zbl 0785.14023. <https://doi.org/10.1070/im1993v040n01abeh001862>.
- [43] V. V. SHOKUROV, Complements on surfaces, *J. Math. Sci. (New York)* **102** no. 2 (2000), 3876–3932, Algebraic geometry, 10. MR 1794169. Zbl 1177.14078. <https://doi.org/10.1007/BF02984106>.
- [44] V. V. SHOKUROV, Log adjunction: effectiveness and positivity, 2013. arXiv 1308.5160.
- [45] S. TAKAYAMA, Pluricanonical systems on algebraic varieties of general type, *Invent. Math.* **165** no. 3 (2006), 551–587. MR 2242627. Zbl 1108.14031. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s00222-006-0503-2>.
- [46] Q. ZHANG, Rational connectedness of log \mathbf{Q} -Fano varieties, *J. Reine Angew. Math.* **590** (2006), 131–142. MR 2208131. Zbl 1093.14059. <https://doi.org/10.1515/CRELLE.2006.006>.

(Received: May 1, 2016)

(Revised: December 6, 2018)

DPMMS, CENTRE FOR MATHEMATICAL SCIENCES, UNIVERSITY OF CAMBRIDGE,
CAMBRIDGE, UK

E-mail: c.birkar@dpmms.cam.ac.uk